2014 **C-MAX** HYBRID | **C-MAX** ENERGI **Owner's Manual**

fordowner.com

ford.ca

2014 **C-MAX** HYBRID | **C-MAX** ENERGI **Owner's Manual**

FSC
MIX
Paper
FSC® C102270

EM5J 19A321 FA | November 2013 | First Printing | Owner's Manual | C-MAX Hybrid | Energi | Litho in U.S.A.

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2013

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20131007211151

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Manual.....7
Symbols Glossary.....7
Data Recording.....9
California Proposition 65.....11
Perchlorate.....11
Ford Credit.....11
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....11
Special Notices.....12
Mobile Communications Equipment.....12
Export Unique Options.....13

Child Safety
General Information.....14
Installing Child Seats.....15
Booster Seats.....21
Child Seat Positioning.....23
Child Safety Locks.....24

Safety Belts
Principle of Operation.....26
Fastening the Safety Belts.....27
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....29
Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....30
Safety Belt Minder.....30
Child Restraint and Safety Belt Maintenance.....32

Personal Safety System™
Personal Safety System™.....33

Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation.....34
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....35
Front Passenger Sensing System.....36
Side Airbags.....38
Driver Knee Airbag.....39
Safety Canopy™.....39
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....41
Airbag Disposal.....42

Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....43
Remote Control.....43
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....48

MyKey™
Principle of Operation.....49
Creating a MyKey.....50
Clearing All MyKeys.....50
Checking MyKey System Status.....50
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....51
MyKey Troubleshooting.....52

Locks
Locking and Unlocking.....55
Manual Liftgate.....59
Power Liftgate.....60

Security
Passive Anti-Theft System.....63
Anti-Theft Alarm.....64

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....65
Audio Control.....65
Voice Control.....66
Cruise Control.....66
Information Display Control.....66

Wipers and Washers
Windshield Wipers.....68
Autowipers.....68

Windshield Washers.....69
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....70

Lighting

Lighting Control.....71
Autolamps.....71
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....72
Headlamp Exit Delay.....73
Daytime Running Lamps.....73
Front Fog Lamps.....73
Direction Indicators.....73
Interior Lamps.....73
Ambient Lighting.....75

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....76
Global Opening.....77
Exterior Mirrors.....77
Interior Mirror.....79
Sun Visors.....79
Sun Shades.....79

Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....81
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....83
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....87

Information Displays

General Information.....88
Information Messages.....98

Climate Control

Automatic Climate Control.....105
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....107
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....107
Cabin Air Filter.....108
Remote Start.....108

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....110
Head Restraints.....110
Manual Seats.....112
Power Seats.....113
Rear Seats.....115
Heated Seats.....115
Rear Seat Armrest.....116

Universal Garage Door Opener

Universal Garage Door Opener.....117

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....121

Storage Compartments

Center Console.....123
Overhead Console.....123

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....124
Ignition Switch.....124
Keyless Starting.....124
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....125
Engine Block Heater.....127

Unique Driving Characteristics

Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....129

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....135
Fuel Quality.....136
Running Out of Fuel.....137
Refueling.....138
Fuel Consumption.....142
Emission Control System.....143

High Voltage Battery
General Information.....146
Charging the High Voltage Battery.....148
High Voltage Battery Cut-Off Switch.....151

Transmission
Automatic Transmission.....153

Brakes
General Information.....156
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....157
Parking Brake.....157
Hill Start Assist.....157

Traction Control
Principle of Operation.....159
Using Traction Control.....159

Stability Control
Principle of Operation.....160
Using Stability Control.....161

Parking Aids
Parking Aid.....162
Active Park Assist.....164
Rear View Camera.....168

Cruise Control
Principle of Operation.....171
Using Cruise Control.....171

Driving Aids
Steering.....173

Load Carrying
Rear Under Floor Storage.....174
Luggage Covers.....174
Load Limit.....175

Towing
Towing a Trailer.....182
Transporting the Vehicle.....182
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....182

Driving Hints
Breaking-In.....184
Economical Driving.....184
Driving Through Water.....185
Floor Mats.....186

Roadside Emergencies
Roadside Assistance.....187
Hazard Warning Flashers.....188
Fuel Shutoff.....188
Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....188
Collision, Damage or Fire Event.....191
Post-Crash Alert System.....193

Customer Assistance
Getting the Services You Need.....194
In California (U.S. Only).....195
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....196
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....196
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....197
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....198
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....198
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....199

Fuses
Fuse Specification Chart.....200
Changing a Fuse.....207

Maintenance
General Information.....209

Opening and Closing the Hood.....209
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Hybrid.....210
Engine Oil Dipstick.....212
Engine Oil Check.....212
Engine Coolant Check.....213
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....217
Brake Fluid Check.....217
Power Steering Fluid Check.....217
Washer Fluid Check.....217
Fuel Filter.....217
Changing the 12V Battery.....218
Checking the Wiper Blades.....219
Changing the Wiper Blades.....219
Adjusting the Headlamps.....221
Removing a Headlamp.....222
Changing a Bulb.....222
Bulb Specification Chart.....227
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....229

Vehicle Care

General Information.....232
Cleaning Products.....232
Cleaning the Exterior.....232
Waxing.....233
Cleaning the Engine.....233
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....234
Cleaning the Interior.....234
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....234
Cleaning Leather Seats.....235
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....236
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....236
Vehicle Storage.....236

Wheels and Tires

Temporary Mobility Kit.....239
Tire Care.....245
Using Snow Chains.....259
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....259
Technical Specifications.....263

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications.....265
Motorcraft Parts.....266
Vehicle Identification Number.....267
Vehicle Certification Label.....267
Transmission Code Designation.....268
Technical Specifications.....269

Audio System

General Information.....272
Audio unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....273
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....275
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD.....277
Digital Radio.....280
Satellite Radio.....282
Audio Input Jack.....285
USB Port.....285
Media Hub.....286

SYNC™

General Information.....287
Using Voice Recognition.....289
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....291
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....302
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....308
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....316

MyFord Touch™

General Information.....322
Settings.....330
Entertainment.....341
Phone.....359

Electric Vehicle Information.....364
Information.....375
Climate.....384
Navigation.....387

Accessories

Accessories.....397

Appendices

End User License Agreement.....399

Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP)

Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP).....414

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information.....417
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....421
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....424
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....427

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.

E154903

A	Right-hand side
B	Left-hand side

Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Safety alert

See Owner's Manual

Air conditioning system

Anti-lock braking system

Avoid smoking, flames or sparks

Battery

Battery acid

Brake fluid - non petroleum based

Brake system

Cabin air filter

Check fuel cap

Child safety door lock or unlock

Child seat lower anchor

Child seat tether anchor

Cruise control

Do not open when hot

Engine air filter

Engine coolant

Engine coolant temperature

Engine oil

Explosive gas

Fan warning

Fasten safety belt

Front airbag

Front fog lamps

Fuel pump reset

Fuse compartment

Hazard warning flashers

Heated rear window

Heated windshield

Interior luggage compartment release

Jack

Keep out of reach of children

Lighting control

Low tire pressure warning

Maintain correct fluid level

Note operating instructions

Panic alarm

Parking aid

Parking brake

Power steering fluid

Power windows front/rear

Power window lockout

Service engine soon

Side airbag

Shield the eyes

Stability control

Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, when your vehicle is in for service or repair, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them data for vehicle improvement purposes. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See **SYNC™** (page 287).

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Note: *Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature.* See **SYNC™** *(page 287).*

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the

vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions.
See **SYNC™** (page 287).

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNING

Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

FORD CREDIT

(U.S. Only)

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as help manage your account.

Phone: 1-800-727-7000

For more information regarding Ford Credit, as well as access Account Manager, please go to www.fordcredit.com.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNINGS

Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury. See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 34).

Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles

WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow

Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance

Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNINGS

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, or are the minimum

WARNINGS

requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in your vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, locate your local St. John Ambulance office by searching for St. John Ambulance on the internet, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (http://www.tc.gc.ca). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat back upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 36).

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS

Child Seats

E142594

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

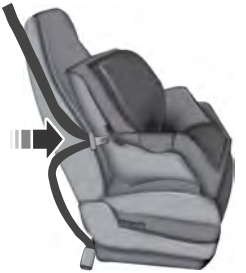
Note: *Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.*

E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

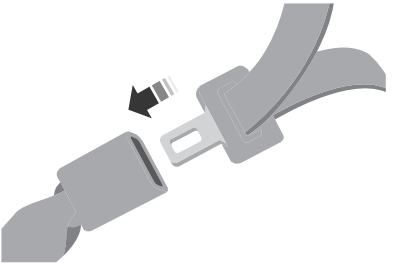
E142529

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

E142875

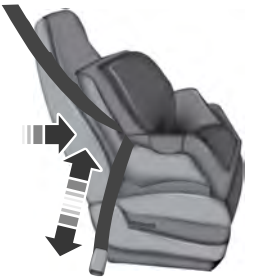
5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.

E142533

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).



E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a Certified Passenger Seat Technician.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH)

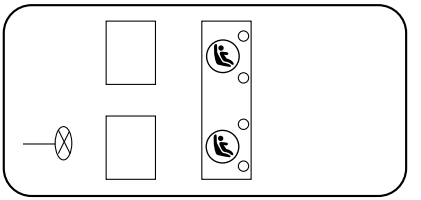
WARNINGS

Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where seat back and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.



E142535

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.

E144054

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat back below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

WARNING

The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (28 centimeters) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 inches (46 centimeters) apart. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

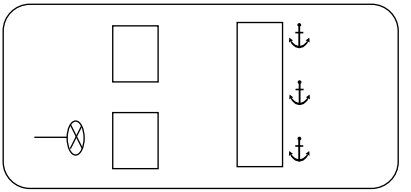
Using Tether Straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

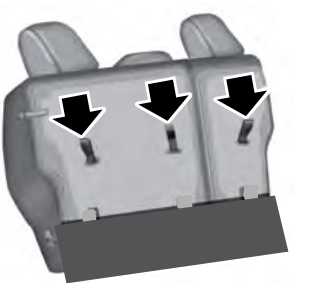


E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

Note: *If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, the head restraints can also be removed.



E161562

2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol and are partially covered by the gap panel. Pull the panel back to fully expose the anchors.

E161563

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

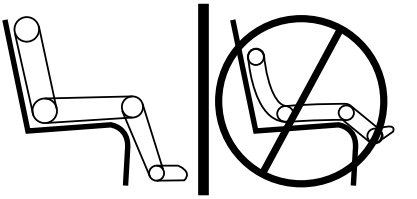
BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats

E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

E142596

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and

WARNINGS

warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.

Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Restraint type	Combined weight of child and child restraint seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See* ***Seats*** *(page 110).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.

E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

WARNINGS

Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- lap and shoulder safety belts
- shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt)
- height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions
- retractor and anchor pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions
- belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position

- safety belt warning light and chime

- crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

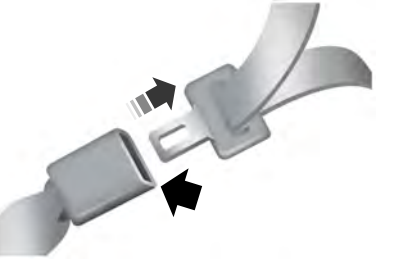
The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers. The safety belt pretensioners on the retractor and anchor at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body when activated. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal crashes, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.

E142587

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

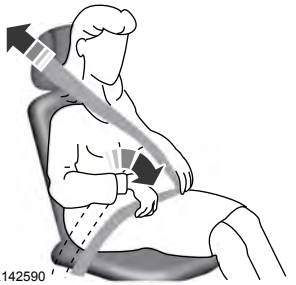
E142589

When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seat backs.

Restraint of Pregnant Women

WARNING

Always ride and drive with your seat back upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.



Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Safety Belt Locking Modes

WARNINGS

After any vehicle crash, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

Belt and retractor assembly must be replaced if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in crashes.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 14).

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Safety Belt Extension Assembly

WARNING

Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer. Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

E87511

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SAFETY BELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME

This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

SAFETY BELT MINDER

Belt-Minder®

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light when the driver's or front passenger's seat is occupied and the safety belt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings have expired (warnings for about five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder feature.

If...	Then...
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for about five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for about one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for about five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

WARNING

While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate or activate the system while driving the vehicle.

Note: *The driver and front passenger warning are deactivated and activated independently. When deactivating or activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- the parking brake is set
- the transmission selector lever is in position **P**
- the ignition is off
- the driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.

1. Turn the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once Step 3 is started, the procedure must be completed within 60 seconds.
3. For the seating position being disabled, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will turn on.

4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light will flash for confirmation.

- This will disable the feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled.
- This will enable the feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SAFETY BELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 232).

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors (first row only), and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.

How Does the Personal Safety System Work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the safety belt pretensioners and may activate either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation as this may result in serious injury.

If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

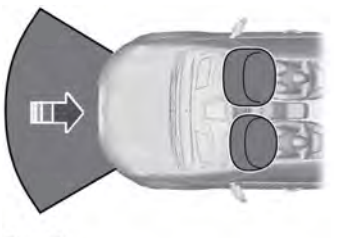
Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules.
- front passenger sensing system.

· crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Sitting improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system which could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly–seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

E145987

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag off indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

Note: *When the ignition is first turned on, the passenger airbag off light will illuminate for a short period of time to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **STRONGLY** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator does not illuminate, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will not illuminate.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the passenger airbag status indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	Unlit	Disabled
Child	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

Note: *When the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is illuminated, the passenger side airbag (seat mounted) may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.*

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console
- Objects hanging off the seatback
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.

Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

The driver or adult passengers should check for objects that lodged underneath the front passenger seat, or cargo interfering with the seat.

If there are lodged objects, or cargo is interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

WARNINGS

If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.

E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.

·Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

Note: *The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty passenger seat.*

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

A driver's knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver's knee airbag based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver’s knee airbag may deploy but the driver’s front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

SAFETY CANOPY™

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

WARNINGS

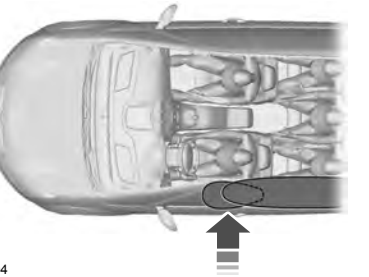
Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

All occupants of your vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and curtain airbag is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

If the curtain airbags have deployed, the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment

- The crash sensors and monitoring system have a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING

Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module which deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags, and the Safety Canopy. Based on the type of accident (frontal impact, side impact or rollover) the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.
- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The safety belt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system is designed to activate when your vehicle sustains frontal or sideways deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (for example, crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the safety belt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term* ***IC*** *before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

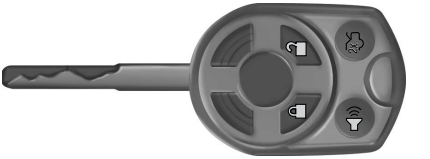
The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met:

- You touch the inside of the front exterior door handle.
- You press the luggage compartment button.
- You press a button on the transmitter.

If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area or if the transmitter battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 43).

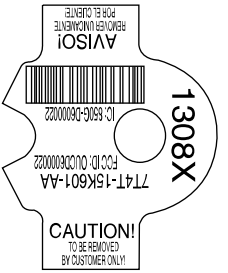
REMOTE CONTROL

Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (If Equipped)



E142585

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.



E138615

Note: *Your vehicle's keys came with a security label that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)

Type 1

E162192

Type 2

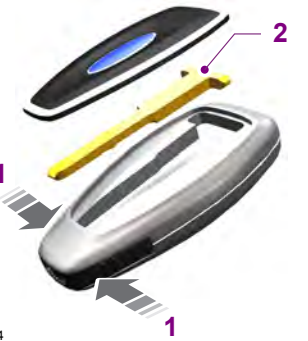
E138616

Your intelligent access keys operate the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

Mechanical Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that you can use to unlock the driver door.

Type 1



E87964

To release the mechanical key blade:

1. Press and hold the push buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.

Type 2

E142431

Slide the release on the back of the transmitter to release the key blade, then pull the blade out.

E138618

Note: *Your vehicle's back-up keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.*

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.*

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

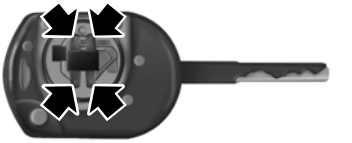
Note: *Replacing the battery will not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

E138619

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.
2. Remove the old battery.



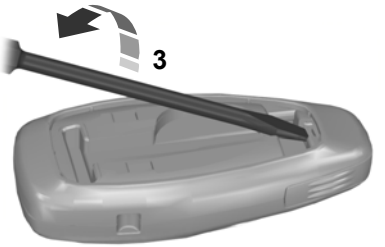
E138620

3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
4. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter.

Intelligent Access Key (Type 1)

E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.

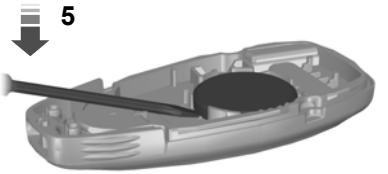


E105362

3. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to start separating the two halves of the remote control.

E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery with the **+** facing downward.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Install the key blade.

Intelligent Access Key (Type 2)

1. Remove the backup key from the transmitter.

E142432

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the backup key head to remove the battery cover. Do not use the backup key to remove the cover or you could damage the intelligent access key.

E138622

3. Remove the old battery.
4. Insert a new battery with the **+** facing downward. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
5. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter and install the backup key.

Car Finder

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Note: *If locking was not successful or if any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the lamps will not flash.*

Sounding a Panic Alarm (If Equipped)

Note: *The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.*

Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate it.

Remote Start (C-MAX Energi Only)

WARNING

To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.*

The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from outside the vehicle. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 105).

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

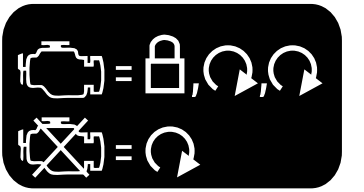
the remote

The remote start system will not work if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is on
- The alarm system triggers
- You disable the feature
- The hood is open
- The transmission is not in **P**
- The vehicle battery voltage is too low
- The powertrain fault indicator was on the last time your vehicle was driven

Remote Starting the Vehicle

Note: *You must press each button within three seconds of each other. Your vehicle will not remote start and the horn will not sound if you do not follow this sequence.*



E138626

The label on your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To remote start your vehicle:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps will flash twice.

The horn will sound if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start will run the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. You can switch it on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

Note: *If you remote start your vehicle with an integrated keyhead transmitter, you must switch the ignition on before driving your vehicle. If you remote start your vehicle with an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the* ***START/STOP*** *button on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.*

The power windows will not work during the remote start and the radio will not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps will remain on and the vehicle will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

Extending the Vehicle Run Time

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the vehicle still running to extend the run time for another remote start duration. If the duration is set to last 10 minutes, the duration will extend by another 10 minutes. For example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the vehicle will continue to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can extend the remote start up to a maximum of 30 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown.

Turning the Vehicle Off After Remote Starting

Press the button once. The parking lamps will turn off.

You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 63).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- create a MyKey
- program configurable MyKey settings
- clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles with intelligent access with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin intelligent access key fob are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the ignition on to start the vehicle.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Belt-Minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat occupants' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS) with cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.
- Vehicle speed minders of 45, 55 or 65 mph (75, 90 or 105 km/h). Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off Advance Trac (if your vehicle is equipped with this feature).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, hold the intelligent access key next to the steering column. Details on the correct fob placement and position is in another chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 124).

2. Switch the ignition on.

3. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings** and then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or the **>** button.

4. Press **OK** or the **>** button to select **Create MyKey**.

5. When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at your vehicle's next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). Refer to **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings:

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings**, then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or the **>** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to get to a configurable feature.
4. Press **OK** or **>** to make a selection.

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the engine off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear all MyKeys within the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. If you switch your ignition off, however, you will need to use an admin key to clear your MyKeys.

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status at once.*

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, use the information display to do the following:

1. Access the main menu and select **Settings**, then **MyKey**.
2. Scroll to **Clear MyKey** and press the **OK** button.
3. Hold the **OK** button until **ALL MYKEYS CLEARED** displays.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display.

MYKEY DISTANCE

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKey. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

NUMBER OF MYKEY(S)

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.

NUMBER OF ADMIN KEY(S)

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non-Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, please see your Ford authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

Vehicles With Ford-approved Aftermarket Remote Start Systems

When using a Ford-approved aftermarket remote start system, the vehicle recognizes the remote start system as an additional admin key. It is the vehicle's default setting. You can also program the remote start as a MyKey. As a result, the MyKey system status menu display includes the remote start system as an additional key in the total count of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED. See **Checking MyKey System Status** (page 50).

When you start your vehicle with a Ford-approved aftermarket remote start system, the system stalls the engine after you open the door or shift the vehicle into gear. This is intentional. When you restart your vehicle, it reads your real key (traditional key or intelligent key fob) status instead of the remote start system's status.

As an added precaution, owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys may want to program the remote start system as a MyKey, if the MyKey driver uses the remote start fob. That way, when the MyKey driver starts the vehicle with the remote start system, the MyKey restrictions remain active.

With a Ford-approved aftermarket remote start system, it is possible to program all real keys as MyKeys unintentionally. If this happens, then the remote start fob is the admin key. If you want to have only one real key as a MyKey, or do not want to have any MyKeys, then you need to use your remote start to clear all MyKeys. In that case, follow these steps:

- Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
- Remote start the vehicle using your remote start fob.
- See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 50). Follow Steps 1-3.

After clearing your MyKeys, you can create a new MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

Note: *For vehicles with Intelligent Access keys (push-button start), you cannot program the remote start system as a MyKey. Always treat the remote start fob as you would any other admin key.*

Vehicles With Non-Ford-approved Aftermarket Remote Start Systems

MyKey is not compatible with non-Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, please see a Ford authorized dealer for a Ford-approved system.

The following information **may** help customers who choose to install a non-Ford-approved remote start system. The actions provided below do not make MyKey compatible with non-Ford-approved remote start systems, but may help you retain some MyKey functions.

When using a non-Ford-approved remote start system, the vehicle may recognize the remote start system as an additional admin key with its associated privileges. If you restart the engine by inserting a key into the ignition cylinder and recycling the ignition completely, then you may retain some MyKey functions. This action forces your vehicle to read the traditional key instead of the remote start fob and then uses the key's associated privileges.

Note: *The MyKey system status menu display may include the remote start system as an additional key in the total count of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED. See* ***Checking MyKey System Status*** *(page 50).*

As an added precaution, owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys may want to program the remote start system as a MyKey, if the MyKey driver uses the remote start fob. That way, when the MyKey driver starts the vehicle with the remote start system, the MyKey restrictions will be remain active.

With a non-Ford-approved aftermarket remote start system, it is possible to program all real keys as MyKeys unintentionally. If this happens, then the remote start fob is the admin key. If you want to have only one real key as a MyKey, or do not want to have any MyKeys, then you need to use your remote start to clear all MyKeys. In that case, follow these steps:

- Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
- Remote start the vehicle using your non-Ford-approved remote start fob.
- See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 50). Follow Steps 1-3.

After clearing your MyKeys, you can create a new MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

Note: *For vehicles with Intelligent Access Keys (Push-button Start), you cannot program the remote start system as a MyKey. Always treat the remote start fob as you would any other admin key.*

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	▪ The key or fob used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. ▪ The key or fob used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). ▪ Vehicles with push-button start: The intelligent access key fob is not positioned correctly next to the steering column. See **Keyless Starting** (page 124).

Condition	Potential Causes
	▪ SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode. ▪ The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See **Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems** (page 51).
I cannot program the configurable settings.	▪ The key or fob used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. ▪ No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50). ▪ The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See **Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems** (page 51).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	▪ The key or fob used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. ▪ No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50). ▪ The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See **Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems** (page 51).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from your authorized dealer.
I lost a key	Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 63).
I accidentally programmed all keys as MyKeys.	▪ The vehicle has a remote start system that is recognized as an admin key. Clear all MyKeys by using the remote start. See **Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems** (page 51). ▪ The vehicle's system does not recognize any programmed MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).
MyKey total includes one additional key.	▪ An unknown key or fob has been created as a MyKey. ▪ The vehicle has a remote start system. See **Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems** (page 51).
Admin key total includes one additional key.	▪ An unknown key or fob has been programmed to the vehicle as an admin key.

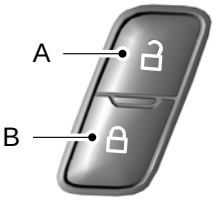
Condition	Potential Causes
	▪ The vehicle has a remote start system. See **Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems** (page 51).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	▪ The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. ▪ An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. ▪ The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the Intelligent Access key.	▪ An admin fob is present at vehicle start. ▪ No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



A Unlock
B Lock

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the instrument panel will light when you lock the doors. It is not a functional control.

Remote Control

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)

Type 1

Type 2

Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The turn signals will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control and intelligent access.

Intelligent access at the driver door will unlock all doors when you disable two-stage unlocking.

Locking the Doors

Type 1

Type 2

Press the button to lock all the doors. The turn signals will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound and the turn signals will flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Note: *If locking was not successful or any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the lamps will not flash.*

Liftgate

WARNINGS

Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before using the liftgate control.

WARNINGS

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Press twice within three seconds to:

- unlatch a manual liftgate
- open, close or stop the movement of a power liftgate. See **Power Liftgate** (page 60).

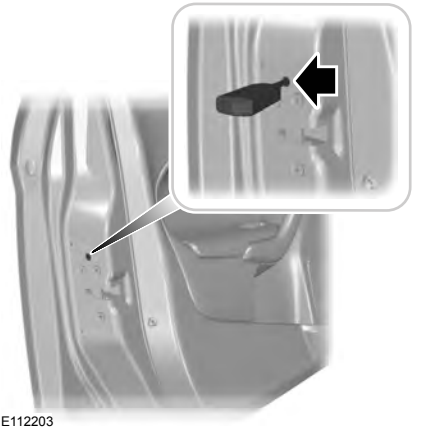
Mechanical Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle once to lock all doors.

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle once to unlock the driver door only.

Locking the Doors Individually

If the power locks fail to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.



E112203

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Opening a Rear Door from Inside

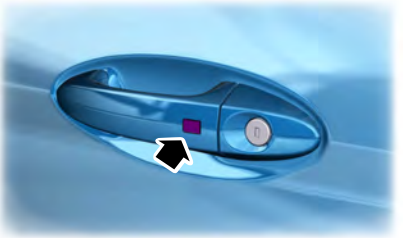
Pull the interior door release handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull will unlatch the door.

Activating Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The intelligent access key must be within 3 feet (1 meter) of your vehicle.

At the Front Doors

Pull a front exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. The unlock sensor is on the back of the handle. Make sure not to touch the lock sensor area on the front of the handle.



E87384

Press and hold the lock sensor area for about a second to lock your vehicle. To avoid unlocking the door inadvertently, make sure you only touch the lock sensor and not other areas of the door handle.

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure it locked.

Note: *Keep the door handle surface clean to avoid issues with operation.*

At the Liftgate

Press the exterior liftgate release button on the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

Smart Unlocks For Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

This feature helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of your vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock then unlock if your key is still in the ignition.

You can still lock your vehicle with the key in the ignition by pressing the lock button on the transmitter even if the doors are not closed.

If both front doors are closed, you can lock your vehicle by any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

Smart Unlocks For Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

This feature helps to prevent you from unintentionally locking your intelligent access key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you lock your vehicle using the power door lock control (with the door open, vehicle in park and ignition off), your vehicle will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment after you close the door. If your vehicle finds a key, all of the doors will immediately unlock.

In order to override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside your vehicle, you can lock your vehicle after all doors are closed by pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key or touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if the ignition is on.

Autolock (If Equipped)

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all doors are closed
- the ignition is on,
- you shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion, and
- your vehicle attains a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

Autounlock (If Equipped)

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h);
- your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory; and
- you open the driver door within 10 minutes of the switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *The doors will not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.*

Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock

Note: *Your authorized dealer can perform this procedure, or you can do the procedure yourself.*

To enable or disable these features, do the following:

Note: *You will have 30 seconds to complete the procedure.*

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock button three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock button three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn will sound indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.

Autolock: Press the power door unlock button then the lock button. The horn will sound once if disabled or twice (one short and one long) if enabled.

Autounlock: Press the power door lock button then the unlock button. The horn will sound once if disabled or twice (one short and one long) if enabled.

After programming the feature, switch the ignition off. The horn will sound once indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You can enable or disable the autounlock feature independently of the autolock feature.*

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote entry system.

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- you start your vehicle,
- you press the remote control lock button, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights will not turn off if:

- you turn them on with the lamp control, or
- any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds elapse, or
- you lock your vehicle from the outside.

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps or dome lamps on and switch the ignition off, the battery saver shuts them off after some time.

Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

If you leave the ignition on after leaving your vehicle, it will shut off 15 minutes after you close all of the doors.

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

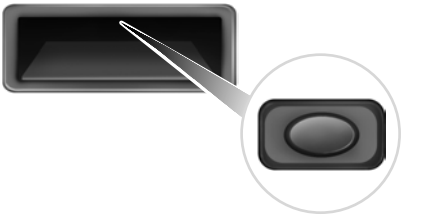
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

With the Remote Control

Press the button twice within three seconds to unlock the liftgate. Manually open the liftgate.

Closing the Liftgate

E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

POWER LIFTGATE (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to play near an open or moving power liftgate.

Note: *Cycling the ignition while the liftgate is power closing and is near the latch may cause the liftgate to reverse to full open position. Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving the vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. You could damage the liftgate or its components.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

If the vehicle is running, the liftgate will only operate with the transmission in park.

Three warning tones will sound once as the liftgate begins to power close. Five short chimes indicate a problem with the open or close request, caused by:

- the ignition is on and the transmission is not in **P**;
- or the battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage;
- or the vehicle speed is at or above 3 mph (5 km/h).

If the liftgate falls to the closed direction after the liftgate has stopped in the open position, four short warning chimes indicate excessive weight on the gate or a possible gas strut failure. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer if you still have the issue after you remove the load.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

WARNING

Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *You can stop the liftgate movement direction with a second press of the instrument panel button or the control button on the liftgate, a second press of the transmitter button, or by using a kicking motion with your foot for hands-free liftgates.*

From the Instrument Panel

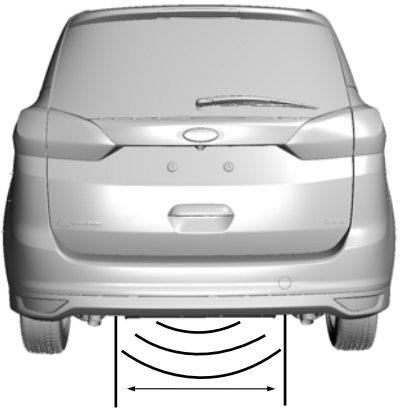
Press the instrument panel button.

With the Remote Control

Press the remote control button twice within three seconds.

Hands-Free Feature (If Equipped)

Make sure you have an intelligent access transmitter within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate.



E174120

1. Move your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion. Do not move your foot sideways or the sensors may not detect the motion.
2. The liftgate will power open or close.

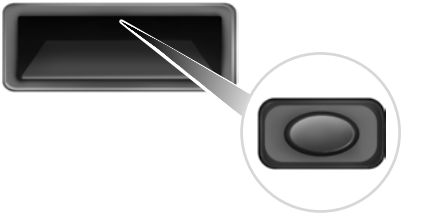
Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation.*

Note: *Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access transmitter away from the rear bumper detection area while washing your car.*

With the Outside Control Button

Opening

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If an intelligent access transmitter is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate, the liftgate will unlock when you press the liftgate release button.

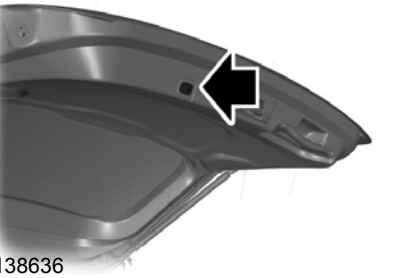


E138632

2. Press the control button located in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate after pressing the control. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation.*

Closing



E138636

Press and release the button.

WARNING

Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Manually move the liftgate to the desired height.
3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until you hear a chime, indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

The new open liftgate height will now be recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

When operating the power liftgate after you have programmed a lower height than full-open, you can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

Obstacle Detection

When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and two short tones sound. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and two short tones sound. Remove the obstacle to operate the liftgate.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

SecuriLock®

The system helps prevent your vehicle from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. Using the wrong key may prevent your vehicle from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened. A message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

Your vehicle arms immediately after you switch the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms your vehicle.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters or two intelligent access keys.*

The integrated keyhead transmitter functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts your vehicle, as well as a remote control.

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters or standard SecuriLock coded keys (integrated keyhead transmitters only) are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

Note: *You can program a maximum of eight coded keys to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.*

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the vehicle immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. See your authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed coded keys are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.

4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start your vehicle and operate the remote entry system (if the new key is an integrated keyhead transmitter).

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

See your authorized dealer to have additional keys programmed to your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM (IF EQUIPPED)

The system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It triggers if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood opens without using the key or remote control.

The direction indicators flash and the horn sounds if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Electronically lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, then switch the ignition on within 12 seconds.

Note: *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 110).*

E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

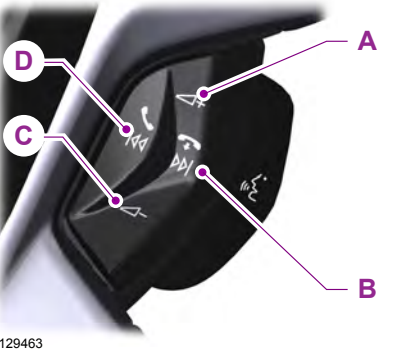
E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E129463

A	Volume up
B	Seek up or next

C Volume down

D Seek down or previous

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

E129464

Pull the control to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNC™** (page 287). See **MyFord Touch™** (page 322).

CRUISE CONTROL

E142437

See **Cruise Control** (page 171).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL

E130248

See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Multimedia Controls (If Equipped)

E145434

Use the arrows on the right side of the steering wheel to navigate through the menus. Press **OK** to make a selection.

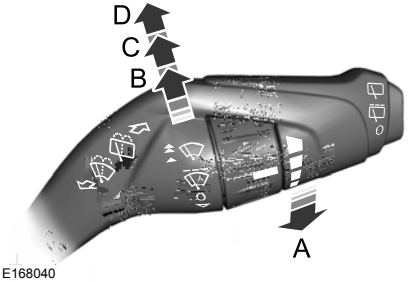
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.*

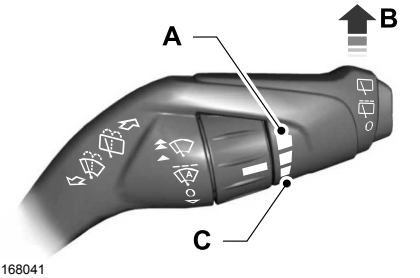
Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*



A	Single wipe
B	Intermittent wipe
C	Normal wipe
D	High speed wipe

Intermittent Wipe



A	Short wipe interval
B	Intermittent wipe
C	Long wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed dependent wipers (if equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease.

AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.*

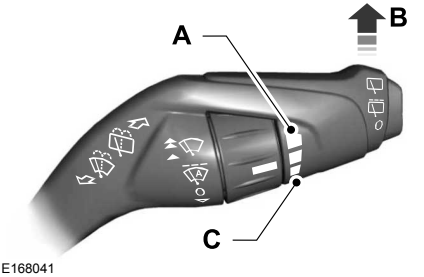
Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *If you switch on the autolamps with the autowipers, the low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the rain sensor turns on the windshield wipers continuously.*

Note: *During wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or a salty road mist, inconsistent or unexpected wiping or smearing may occur.*

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.



A	High sensitivity
B	On
C	Low sensitivity

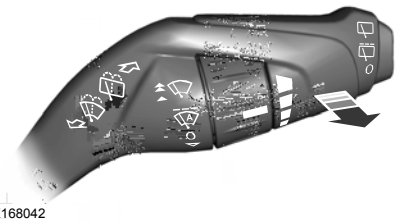
The autowipers feature uses a rain sensor that is located in the area around the interior rear view mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns the wipers on. It will adjust the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. Set the control to low sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield. Set the control to high sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. Dirt or debris around the interior rear view mirror area will affect the autowipers' performance. For example, the autowipers may turn on if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*

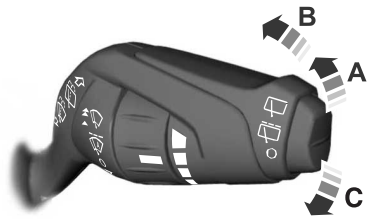


To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper



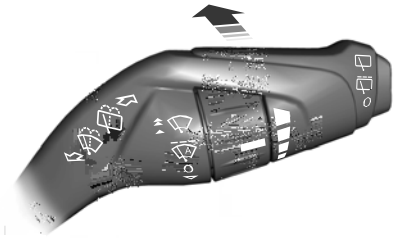
E168043

A	Intermittent wipe
B	Low-speed wipe
C	Off

Press the top of the button at the end of the lever to switch on the intermittent wiper. Press the button again to switch on low-speed wipe. Press the bottom of the button to switch the wiper off, or to change the wiper speed from low-speed to intermittent.

When you shift into R (Reverse), the rear wiper will turn on to intermittent if the front wipers are activated.

Rear Window Washer



E168044

To use the rear washer function, push the lever away from you. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.

LIGHTING CONTROL

E142449

A Off

B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps

C Headlamps

High Beams

E162679

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher

E162680

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

E142451

The headlamps will switch on and off automatically in low light situations or during inclement weather.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps will remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

When the headlamp switch is in the Autolamps position, the windshield wiper activated exterior lamps will turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on. The exterior lamps will turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

This feature does not turn on the exterior lamps:

- during a mist wipe
- while the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition
- if the wipers are in automatic or intermittent modes.

Note: *If you have autolamps and autowipers switched on the low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the windshield wipers operate continuously.*

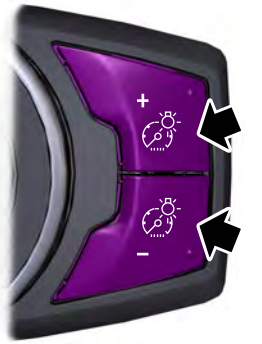
Note: *You may have to manually switch the headlamps on in severe weather conditions.*

Note: *If you have autolamps switched on you can only switch the high beam headlamps on once the system has turned the headlamps on.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.*

Vehicles With Front Fog Lamps



E132712

Press repeatedly or press and hold until the desired level is reached.

Vehicles Without Front Fog Lamps

E165366

A Press repeatedly or press and hold to dim.

B Press repeatedly or press and hold to brighten.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING

Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

The system switches the headlamps on with a reduced output in daylight conditions.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off, or parking lamp position.
3. Disengage the parking brake.
4. Make sure the transmission selector lever is not in position P.

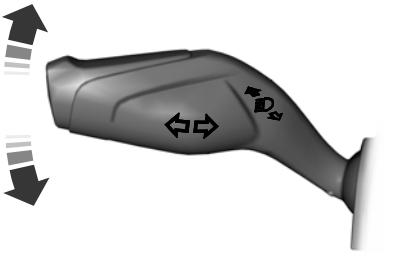
FRONT FOG LAMPS

E142453

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except Off and the high beams are not on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

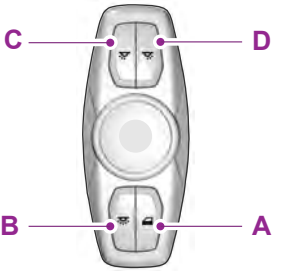
INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps will switch on when one of the following conditions have been met:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press switch B on the front interior lamp.

Front Interior Lamp

Without panorama roof



E161163

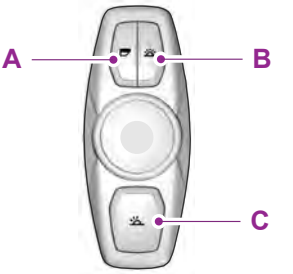
(A) Door function switch. Press this switch to disable the interior lamps. The door function indicator lamp will illuminate yellow with lamps disabled. Press the switch again to turn interior lamps back on. The indicator lamp will illuminate blue.

(B) All lamps on and off switch.

(C)Passenger individual lamp on and off switch.

(D) Driver individual lamp on and off switch.

With panorama roof



E142454

(A) Door function switch. Press this switch to disable the interior lamps. The door function indicator lamp will illuminate yellow with lamps disabled. Press the switch again to turn interior lamps back on. The indicator lamp will illuminate blue.

(B) All lamps on and off switch.

(C) Individual lamp on and off switch.

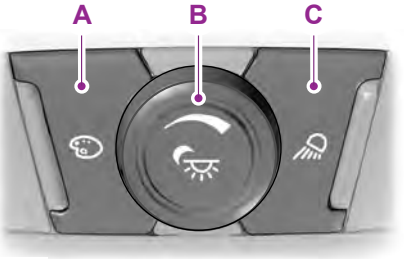
Rear Interior Lamp (If Equipped)

E142455

(A) You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing switch.

AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located in the overhead console.



E142456

A	Color palette
B	Control knob
C	Search mode

Rotate B past the first detent to switch on and adjust to the desired brightness.

Press A to cycle through the color choices.

Press C to switch on all interior lamps and the ambient lighting. Press C again to switch off the interior lamps and return the ambient lighting to the previously selected color.

The ambient lighting will switch on when the following conditions have been met:

- you switch the ignition on
- you switch the headlamps on

The ambient lighting will remain on until you switch the ignition off and one of the following conditions have been met:

- you lock your vehicle
- the accessory delay timer expires.

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

E70848

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Window Lock

E70850

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.

2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. The bounce-back feature is now disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will go past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

See an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

GLOBAL OPENING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Note: *To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.*

Opening the Windows

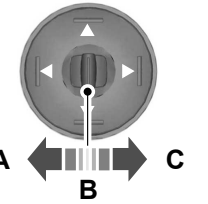
You can only open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

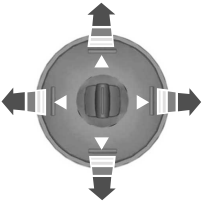
WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E70846

A	Left-hand mirror
B	Off
C	Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Signal Indicator Mirrors

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you activate the turn signal.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 107).

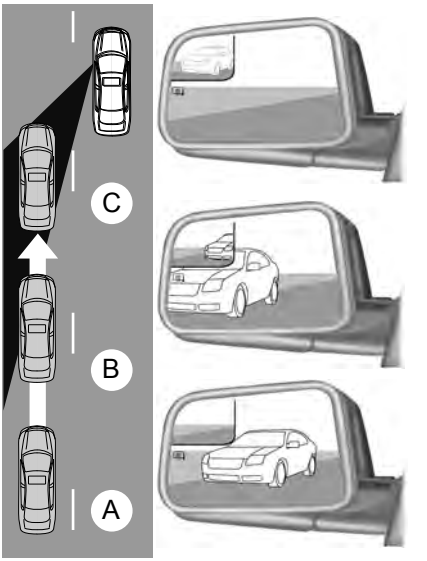
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors

WARNING

Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

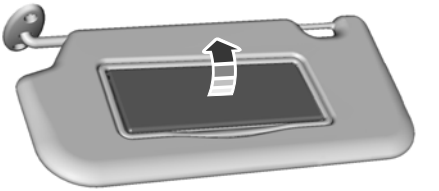
Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

SUN VISORS

Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

SUN SHADES (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNINGS

Do not let children play with the sun shade or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

When closing the sun shade, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade.

The control is located in the overhead console.

The sun shade has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop motion during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Sun Shade

E138668

Fully press and release the front of the control to open the sun shade.

Fully press and release the rear of the control to close the sun shade.

Bounce-Back

The sun shade will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Sun Shade Relearning

WARNING

The bounce-back function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the moving sun shade.

Note: *You must start the relearning process within 30 seconds of switching the ignition on.*

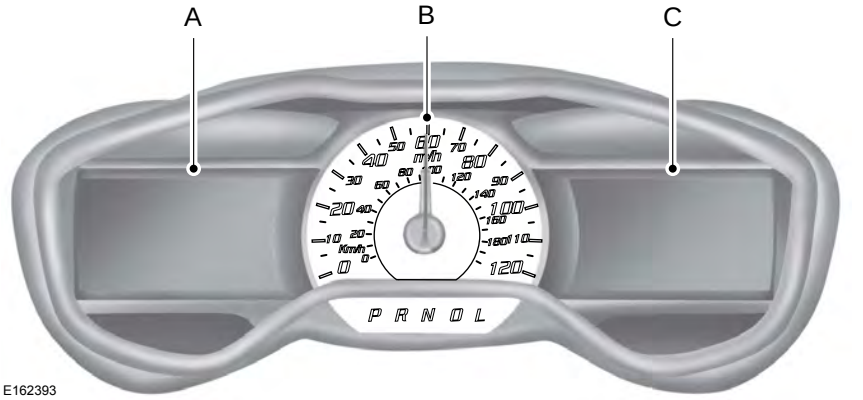
In case the sun shade no longer opens or closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

1. Press the front of the control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
2. Press the rear of the control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
3. Press and hold the front of the control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully opens.
4. Press and hold the rear of the control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully closes.

If you do not complete Step 2 within 15 seconds of Step 1, the relearning function end. Switch the ignition off, wait for another 30 seconds and then switch the ignition back on again. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

Confirm that relearning was successful by opening and closing the sun shade.

GAUGES



A Left Information Display

B Speedometer

C Right Information Display See **General Information** (page 272).

Left Information Display

Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

Fuel Economy

See Common Displays below. For additional menu options. See **General Information** (page 88).

Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 88).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 88).

Right Information Display

Efficiency Leaves

Efficiency leaves indicate short term driving efficiency. The more leaves and vines that are displayed, the better your fuel economy. Leaves and vines will occasionally appear and disappear to indicate a change in driving efficiency.

Note: *The efficiency leaves display can be impacted by your use of brakes, accelerator and accessories, as well as environmental conditions such as hills and weather.*

Common Displays

Fuel Economy Displays:

Displays your average and instantaneous fuel economy on most Display Mode screens.

Note: *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls. Average fuel economy cannot be reset while on the MyView screen.*

- Average Fuel Economy - is continuously averaged since the last reset. You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls. For Energi vehicles both Hybrid and Plug-in Power mode operation will be included in the calculation.
- Instantaneous Fuel Economy - If your instantaneous fuel economy is greater than the maximum value displayed, a + sign will be shown next to the maximum scale number. When the vehicle is operating on battery power only, EV is displayed and the gauge fill is shown in blue.

Battery Gauge:

Note: *Battery gauge information can be individually selected on or off through Battery Display in the Options sub-menu. From any main display a right arrow press on the steering wheel controls will take you to the Options sub-menu.*

Note: *For Energi vehicles there are two versions of the battery gauge. When the vehicle is in Hybrid Mode the information is shown with a simple battery graphic. When in Plug-in Power Mode an enhanced battery graphic is provided and available electric range is added to the display.*

The high voltage battery gauge appears on the right side of the information display screen. This provides Charge Fill (State of Charge), Charge Assist and Regen Display.

- Charge Fill (Hybrid Mode) - The fill level, or State of Charge indicates the amount of energy stored in the high voltage battery as a percent of total energy capacity. The level will increase or decrease as the battery charges and discharges during normal operation.
- Charge Fill (Energi Plug-in Power Mode) - The fill level indicates the amount of energy stored in the high voltage battery which is available for Plug-in Power Mode. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge (plugging your vehicle in). When the fill reaches empty your vehicle will automatically enter Hybrid Mode.

Note: *The Charge Fill is always shown for Plug-in Power Mode, even if Charge Fill is not selected under Battery Display in the Options sub-menu.*

- Electric Range (Energi Plug-in Power Mode) - The electric range estimate is personalized to the driver's key. The estimate is based on the amount of energy presently available in the high voltage battery and your typical energy usage while driving. This includes your drive habits as well as your use of accessories such as Climate Control. The available battery energy refers to the energy gained from charging the battery while plugged in.
- Charge Assist - The up and down arrows provide information about the energy going into and out of the high voltage battery. The up arrow above the battery indicates battery charging such as from regenerative braking. The down arrow below the battery indicates battery discharging to provide power for propulsion or vehicle accessories.
- Regen Display - When stepping on the brake pedal, a circular arrow symbol appears in the center of the Battery Gauge when energy is being recaptured through the regenerative braking system.

Fuel Gauge:

The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Brake Coach Display:

The Brake Coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner which maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system. The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery.

Trip Summary:

Trip Summary is displayed upon shutting off your vehicle. The data is calculated over the last on and off cycle.

- Distance - The total distance traveled, distance traveled on battery power only (EV distance) and Regen distance are displayed. Regen distance is the estimated range gained from energy recaptured through regenerative braking.
- Fuel Use - The average fuel economy and total fuel used are displayed. In addition for Energi, the total electrical energy used while in Plug-in Power Mode is displayed in kilowatt hours (kWh).
- Brake Score - The average percentage of braking energy recaptured and returned to the high voltage battery through regenerative braking.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

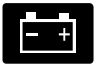
The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will light when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Anti-Lock Braking System

If it lights when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have normal braking (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp also lights. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Battery



If it lights while driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Brake System

Lights when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it lights when you are driving, check that you do not have the parking brake engaged. If you do not have the parking brake engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by an authorized dealer.

WARNING

Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Lights when you switch on this feature.

Direction Indicator

Lights when you switch on the left or right direction indicator or hazard warning flasher. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 222).

Door Ajar

Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine and Motor Coolant Temperature

Lights when the engine or motor coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool.

Engine Oil

If it lights with the engine running or while you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).

Note: *Do not resume your journey if it lights despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.*

EV Now

Lights when you select this feature on. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle** (page 129).

EV Later

Lights when you select this feature on. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle** (page 129).

Fasten Safety Belt

It will light and a tone will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 30).

Front Airbag

If it fails to light when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps (If Equipped)

Lights when you switch the front fog lamps on.

High Beam

Lights when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Liftgate Ajar

Lights when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Battery (If Equipped)

Lights when the battery level is low. You may also see a message suggesting you reduce your usage of the climate system.

Low Fuel Level

Lights when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning

Lights when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It also lights momentarily when you switch on the ignition to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not light when you switch on the ignition, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Overdrive Cancel and Grade Assist (If Equipped)

Lights when the overdrive function in the transmission turns off and the grade assist turns on.

Parking Lamps

Lights when you switch the parking lamps on.

Powertrain Fault

Lights when the system detects a powertrain or high-voltage charge system fault. If the indicator stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Note: *If your vehicle detects certain faults, it will not allow you to operate the accelerator pedal. If this happens, press the brake pedal and release it. This will activate limp home vehicle operation. In limp home vehicle operation, your vehicle will accelerate in a controlled manner up to a maximum speed of 35 mph (56 km/h) on a flat surface. If you apply the brake pedal or move the transmission to neutral (N) you can override your vehicle's acceleration.*

Ready to Drive

Lights after your switch your vehicle on and it is ready to drive. A corresponding message may display stating ready to drive.

Service Engine Soon

If the service engine soon indicator light stays on after you switch on the engine, this indicates that the On-Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On-Board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 143).

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

Note: *Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components.*

The service engine soon indicator lights when you first switch on the ignition prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection and Maintenance testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until you switch on the engine, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for Inspection and Maintenance testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 143).

Stability Control

Lights when the system is active. If it remains on or does not light when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system will turn off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 161).

Stability Control Off

Lights when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 161).

Stop Safely

Indicates an electrical component fault or failure that will cause the vehicle to shutdown or enter into a limited operating mode. A message may also display.

Vehicle Plugged in (If Equipped)

Lights after you plug in your vehicle. A corresponding message may display after attempting to start the vehicle.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition with it in the off or accessory position.

Engine On Warning Chime

A warning chime will sound when any door is opened if the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit the vehicle and the keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating the vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Automatic Transmission Warning Chime

Sounds when you have not moved the transmission selector lever to position **P**. A message will be shown in the display.

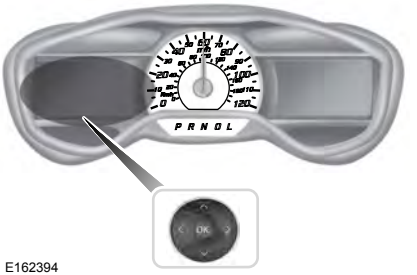
GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

Information Display Controls



E162394

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Main menu

From the main menu bar on the left side of the information display, you can choose from the following categories:

Display Mode

Trip 1 & 2

Fuel Economy

Information

Settings

Scroll up or down to highlight one of the categories, then press the right arrow key or **OK** to enter into that category. Press the left arrow key as needed to exit back to the main menu.

Display Mode

Use the up and down arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

Note: *The cluster will remember menu level 2 state when the individual key state is changed from RUN to the OFF position.*

Display Mode			
Menu level 2	**Menu level 3**	**Menu level 4**	**Menu level 5**
Vehicle Range (Estimated Range + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Instantaneous Fuel	—	—
	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—
Inform (Avg Fuel Economy + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Instantaneous Fuel	—	—
	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—
Enlighten (Power + Avg Fuel Economy + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Instantaneous Fuel	—	—
	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—
Engage (Split Power + Avg Fuel Economy + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Instantaneous Fuel	—	—
	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—
Empower	Instantaneous Fuel	—	—

Display Mode			
(Power (with engine on/off threshold) + Avg Fuel Economy + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—
MyView (MyView + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Change MyView	Vehicle Range	Vehicle Range
		Avg Fuel	Avg Fuel
		Power	Inst. Fuel
		Split Power	Coolant Temp
		Power + Threshold	Accessory Power
		Tach rpm x 1000	Trip 1
		Tach rpm x 1000 + Avg mpg	Trip 2
		Accessory Power	Fuel History
		Trip 1	Coach
		Trip 2	Blank

Display Mode (cont'd)			
Menu level 2	**Menu level 3**	**Menu level 4**	**Menu level 5**
MyView (cont'd) (MyView + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Change MyView (cont'd)	Fuel History	—
		Coach	—
		Blank	—
	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—

Display Mode (cont'd)			
Energy Use (Energi only) Auto EV (consumption gauge + climate power gauge + battery gauge + fuel gauge) EV Now (consumption gauge with budget cup + climate power gauge + engine enable + battery gauge + fuel gauge) EV Later (consumption gauge + climate power gauge + battery gauge + fuel gauge)	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—

Vehicle Range

Indicates the estimated distance the vehicle will travel with the energy currently available. For Hybrid, the vehicle range estimate is based on the fuel remaining in the gasoline tank. For Energi, the total estimated range equals the range available in Hybrid Mode fueled by gasoline, plus the electric range available in Plug-in Power Mode. Changes in driving pattern may cause the values to vary.

Inform

Inform shows the fuel level, battery display and average fuel economy, with options available for the Battery Display and an Instantaneous Fuel Economy gauge. When the vehicle is operating on battery power only with the engine off, EV is displayed.

Enlighten

Enlighten displays power demand in addition to the typical information and options from Inform. The Instantaneous Fuel Economy gauge will be displayed by default. When the vehicle is operating on battery power only with the engine off, EV is displayed and the gauge fill is shown in blue. When both the engine and high voltage battery are providing power the gauge fill is white.

Engage

Engage replaces the power demand gauge from Enlighten with separate gauges for engine power and high voltage battery power. The engine power gauge fill is white and the high voltage battery power gauge fill is blue. When the vehicle is operating on battery power only with the engine off, EV is displayed.

Empower

Empower adds an engine on/off threshold to the power demand gauge from Enlighten. The threshold is shown as a blue double outline. The gauge is designed to show you how close you are to the gasoline engine on/off threshold and how much power you are requesting based on how far you press the accelerator pedal.

When power demand is below the threshold the vehicle is operating on battery power only with the engine off, EV is displayed and the gauge fill is shown in blue.

When power demand exceeds the threshold both the engine and the high voltage battery provide power and the gauge fill is white.

When power demand surpasses the amber indicator, this level of demand and associated fuel economy are shown in amber.

Note: *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

MyView

You can choose what to display in this view. Selecting **Change MyView** in the options menu allows you to scroll through two columns of content choices.

- Press the up or down arrow to view content.
- Use the right and left arrows to move between the left column content and the middle column content.
- The right column is reserved for the Battery Gauge and the Fuel Gauge.

Once you have your desired content showing in each column then press **OK** to save. This becomes your new MyView screen.

Unique content available in MyView:

- Accessory Power— Indicates electrical power demands from your vehicle's accessory systems. Accessories use power but do not contribute to propelling the vehicle. The gauge separately displays power demand in kilowatts (kW) for climate and other accessories.

Climate includes the power being used by high voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater (Energi vehicles only)

Other includes all power being used by the low voltage accessories (cabin fans, headlights, heated seats, etc.).

- Coolant Temp – Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be white and will be in the normal range (between H and C). If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, the level indicator will change to red to indicate that the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the vehicle and let the engine cool.

The thermometer indicator next to the gauge will illuminate in blue or white to indicate the following (not available for Energi vehicles):

- Blue thermometer - This indicates that the hybrid system is not warm enough to allow EV operation. The gasoline engine will typically run continuously when the indicator is blue.

Note: *During silent key start mode, the thermometer indicator will be blue, but the gasoline engine will not run. This is the result of the vehicle computer allowing the engine to be cooler during the silent key start period. This is normal operation and does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. After the first engine start the indicator will turn white when the gasoline engine is warm enough to turn off.*

- White thermometer - This indicates that the hybrid system is warm enough to allow EV operation. If the vehicle operates on battery power long enough, it is possible that the gasoline engine may need to run to keep the system warm. In this case, the thermometer indicator will revert back to blue.
- Tach rpm x 1000 — When the gasoline engine is running, the tachometer gauge displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). When the vehicle is operating on battery power only with the engine off, EV is displayed and the tachometer is greyed out.

Note: *The trip data, and average fuel economy cannot be reset in MyView.*

Energy Use (Energi only)

Energy Use provides an energy use gauge and a climate power gauge in addition to fuel level and battery display. When you select EV Now operation this screen will automatically be shown. You can press OK to enable the engine when viewing this screen during EV Now operation. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle** (page 129).

- Consumption Gauge: Your current present energy use per distance traveled is represented by the white line that moves up and down in the gauge. A higher line means you are using more energy (lower is better). Your energy use includes input from the accelerator pedal as well as the accessories, such as Climate Control.

When operating in EV Now a blue cup shape is shown around the gauge. This represents the maximum energy usage you can maintain in order to achieve the estimated electric range shown on the battery gauge at the time of entering EV now. Keep your current energy use mostly within the cup while driving and you should achieve your electric range estimate.

- Climate Power Gauge: Indicates high voltage electrical power demand from you vehicle's high voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater. These components use power but do not contribute to propelling the vehicle. The gauge displays power demand in kilowatts (kW).

Trip 1 & 2

Use the arrow buttons to choose between the following.

Note: *Pressing **OK** resets the odometer and timer.*

Trip 1 & 2			
Menu level 2	**Menu level 3**	**Menu level 4**	**Menu level 5**
Trip 1 & Trip 2 (Trip Data+Battery Gauge+Fuel Gauge)	Standard	—	—
		—	—
		—	—
	Enhanced	—	—
		—	—
		—	—
	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
—	Help	—	—

Standard - Elapsed trip time, Trip distance and EV distance

- Elapsed trip time — timer stops when the vehicle is turned off and restarts when the vehicle is restarted.
- Trip distance — shows the accumulated trip distance.
- EV distance — shows the distance traveled while operating on battery power only with the engine off.

Enhanced - Standard options plus, Average fuel economy, Estimated amount of fuel consumed and Estimated amount of electricity consumed (Energi only)

- Average fuel economy - is continuously averaged since the last reset. For Energi vehicles both hybrid and plug-in power mode operation will be included in the calculation.
- Estimated amount of fuel consumed — shows the amount of fuel used for a given trip.
- Estimated amount of electricity consumed — shows the amount of plug-in electricity used for a given trip.

Fuel Economy

Use the arrow buttons to choose the desired energy display.

Fuel Economy			
Menu level 2	**Menu level 3**	**Menu level 4**	**Menu level 5**
Fuel History (Instantaneous Fuel Economy + Fuel Economy History + Avg Fuel Economy+Battery Gauge+Fuel Gauge)	Interval Time	1, 2, 6 min. Intervals	—
	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—
Coach (Coach+Battery Gauge+Fuel Gauge)	Battery Display	Regen Active	Apply to all screens? Yes / No
		Charge Assist	
		Charge Level	
		Help	
	Help	—	—

- **Fuel History:** This view from left to right starts with the instantaneous fuel economy gauge and adds historical fuel economy data. The data is represented as an average for time intervals of either 1, 2 or 6 minutes, with the left most interval being the most recent. Total time for the 5 intervals is shown at the bottom of the view. Intervals shown in grey color are from the previous drive.

Note: *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the **OK** button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

- **Coach:** This view provides a comparison of your recent Acceleration, Braking and Cruising behavior to what is recommended for most efficient use of energy under present conditions. The horizontal bars fill from left to right with best behavior (and Blue color) shown as at least half full. When the bars are less than half full, the color is Amber, suggesting that a change in behavior is needed to achieve better energy efficiency.

Note: *Fuel economy is not always a measure of appropriate driving behavior. For example, when driving uphill and maintaining an appropriate speed, your instant fuel economy may not be good (losing leaves) but the Coach may show a blue bar for Acceleration or Cruising.*

Info

In this mode, you can view different vehicle system information and perform a system check.

Information	
Warnings	Displays the number of warnings that need immediate attention in red. You can only view the warnings from the System Check menu. View them immediately by pressing OK and then OK again to enter system check. Use the up/down arrows to scroll through the warnings.
Tutorial	Displays a number of different system tutorials. Use the up/down arrows to scroll through the tutorials. Then press OK to view.
MyKey	MyKeys (Number of MyKeys programmed)
	MyKey Miles (km) (Distance traveled using a programmed MyKey)
	Admin Keys (Number of admin keys)
System Check	All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll through the list.

Note: *Some items are optional and may not appear.*

Settings

In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices.

Settings			
Menu level 2	**Menu level 3**	**Menu level 4**	**Menu level 5**
Driver Assist	Traction Control	On or Off	—
	ECO Cruise	On (default on key cycle) or Off	—
	Hill Start Assist	On (default on key cycle) or Off	—
	EV + Mode	On or Off	—
	Rear Park Aid	On (default on key cycle) or Off	—

Settings				
Vehicle	Lighting	Auto Light Rain	On or Off	
		Home Light	Select time interval	
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Heater – A/C	Auto or Last Settings
			Front Defrost	Auto or Off
			Rear Defrost	Auto or Off
			Driver Seat	Auto or Off
			Passenger Seat	Auto or Off
		Duration	5, 10 or 15 minutes	
		Quiet Start	On or Off	
		System	Enable or Disable	

Note: *Some MyKey items will only appear if a MyKey is set.*

Settings (cont'd)			
Menu level 2	**Menu level 3**	**Menu level 4**	**Menu level 5**
Vehicle (cont'd)	Tire Mobility Kit	Select number of years	—
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey	—
	Traction Control	Always On or User Selectable	—
	Max Speed	Choose desired speed or off	—
	Speed Minder	Choose desired speed or off	—
	Volume Limiter	On or Off	—
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys	—
Display	Language	Select the desired language	—

Settings (cont'd)			
	Units	Distance	Select the desired units of measure
		Temperature	Fahrenheit (ºF) or Celsius (ºC)
	Brake Coach Display	On or Off	—
	Driving History	Hold OK to Reset	—

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.*

E130248

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

AdvanceTrac®

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Alarm

Message	Action
To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 64).

Battery and Charging System (High Voltage)

Message	Action
Is Vehicle Plugged-In?	Displays when confirmation is needed that the vehicle is unplugged before a start is allowed. You must make sure the vehicle is unplugged and respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Stop Safely Now	Displays when the stop safety hazard warning lamp is illuminated. This indicates an electrical component fault/failure that will cause the vehicle to shut down or enter into limited operating mode.
Ready to Drive	Displays when the vehicle is ready to drive.
Unplug Prior to Starting Vehicle	Displays when the vehicle detects it is still plugged and the power is activated.
Check Battery Charge	Displays when battery charge level is low.
Engine On	Displays when the engine is on.

Doors

Message	Action
X Door Ajar	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Liftgate Ajar	Displays when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level LOW	Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Displayed when the fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel Freshness	Displays when EV functionality is disabled and the engine is running to maintain fuel freshness. See **Fuel Quality** (page 136).
Fuel Door Opening	Displays when the fuel door is opening.
Fuel Door Open	Displays when the fuel door is opened and the vehicle is ready to be refueled.
Close Fuel Door	Displays when the fuel door listed is not closed.
Refuel Error See Manual	Displays when there is a vehicle error and it cannot be refueled.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 157).
Hill Start Assist Active	Displays when hill start assist is active.
Hill Start Assist OFF	Displays when hill start assist is off.

Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
Starting System Fault	This message is displayed when there is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See your authorized dealer for service.
Key Inside Vehicle	Displays to remind you that the key is in the luggage compartment. See **Keyless Starting** (page 124).
Key Not Inside Car	Displays if the key is not detected by the system. See **Keyless Starting** (page 124).
No Key Detected	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See **Keyless Starting** (page 124).

Message	Action
Restart Now or Key is Needed	Displayed when the start/stop button is pressed to shut off the engine and a Intelligent Access Key is not detected inside the vehicle.
Accessory Power Active	Displayed when the vehicle is in the Accessory ignition state.
Press Brake to Start	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Press Brake + Start Button	Displayed as a reminder to apply the brake and push the start button to start the vehicle.
Place Key in Backup Slot	Displayed as needed by the system for proper function.
Key Programmed x Keys Total	Displayed during spare key programming, when an intelligent access key is programmed to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	Displayed during spare key programming when the maximum number of keys have been programmed.
Could Not Program Integrated Key	Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys.

Maintenance

Message	Action
LOW Engine Oil Pressure	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).
Oil Change Required	Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).
Brake Fluid Level LOW	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 217).
Check Brake System	Displays when the brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Engine Coolant Overtem-perature	Displays when the engine coolant temperature is excessively high.

Message	Action
Motor Coolant Overtemperature	Displays when the motor coolant temperature is excessively high.
Service Tire Mobility Kit	Displayed when the kit needs service. See your authorized dealer.
See Manual	Informs the driver that the powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.
Oil Maintenance	Displays when EV functionality is disabled and the engine is running to maintain oil quality. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey Not Created	Displayed during key programming when MyKey cannot be programmed.
MyKey Active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Near Vehicle Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
Check Speed Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.
Traction Control On - MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey is in use and Traction control is activated.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot Be Deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Park Aid	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Parking Aid** (page 162).
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Check Rear Park Aid	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires attention. See **Parking Aid** (page 162).
Check Front Park Aid	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires attention. See **Parking Aid** (page 162).
Park Aid Malfunction	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Parking Aid** (page 162).

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer.

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See your authorized dealer.
Steering malfunction Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.

Remote Start

Message	Action
Remote Start Active	Displayed when the remote start system is active.

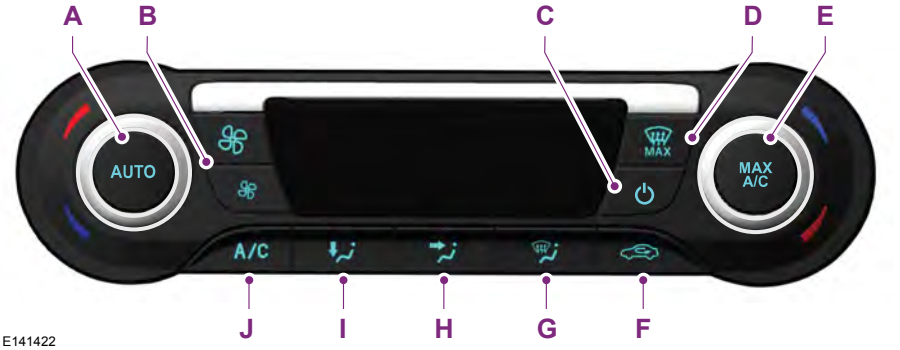
Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Low Tire Pressure	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, see See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Transmission

Message	Action
Shift to Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



A **AUTO:** Press to switch on full automatic operation. Once you select your desired temperature using the temperature control, the system then automatically determines fan speed, airflow distribution, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach and maintain the desired temperature.

B **Fan speed:** Press the large fan icon to increase the fan speed; press the small fan icon to decrease the fan speed. Pressing one of the fan speed buttons while in AUTO takes the system out of AUTO fan mode.

C **On and off button:** Press to switch the system on or off.

D **MAX Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. You can use this mode to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Automatically turns on rear window defroster and heated mirrors. Press this button again to return to the previous airflow selection.

E **MAX A/C:** Press to distribute recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. Air conditioning automatically turns on, the fan speed automatically adjusts to the highest speed and the temperature display returns to the full cool position. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning. Recirculated air may help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle.

F **Recirculated air:** Press to switch from outside air to recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle. Recirculated air turns on automatically when you select MAX A/C, or manually in any airflow mode except defrost. Recirculated air may turn off automatically in all airflow modes except MAX A/C to reduce fog potential. Press the control again to switch off recirculated air and allow fresh air to enter into the vehicle.

G **Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. The system automatically provides outside air to reduce window fogging. Press again to switch off defrost mode.

H **Instrument panel:** Press to distribute air through the instrument panel vents. Press again to switch off panel mode.

I **Floor:** Distributes air through the demister vents and front and rear seat floor vents. Press again to switch off floor mode.

J **A/C:** Press to switch air conditioning on or off. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Air conditioning also turns on automatically in some modes.

Temperature Control

E133115

You can set the temperature between 60ºF (15.5ºC) and 85ºF (29.5ºC) in steps of 1ºF (0.5ºC). In position **LO**, 59ºF (15ºC), the system switches to permanent cooling. In position **HI**, 86ºF (30ºC), the system switches to permanent heating.

Single Zone Temperature Control

In this mode, the climate control system links the temperature settings for both the driver's side and passenger's side. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver’s side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger’s side.

Dual Zone Temperature Control

Select a temperature for the passenger’s side using the rotary control on the passenger’s side. Single zone temperature control automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver’s side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver's side and passenger's side temperatures independently. The display shows the temperature settings for each side.

Switching Back to Single Zone Temperature Control

Press and hold **AUTO** for 2-4 seconds. The passenger's side temperature switches to the driver's side temperature setting.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *Do not adjust the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The system automatically adjusts to the previously stored settings. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *At low ambient temperatures with AUTO selected, the system directs the air stream toward the windshield and side windows for as long as the engine remains cold.*

Note: *When you switch off the system, outside air does not enter your vehicle.*

Note: *When the system is in AUTO mode, and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system automatically selects recirculated air to maximize cooling of the interior. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically selects outside air.*

Note: *When you select windshield defrosting and defogging, the instrument panel and footwell level functions switch off automatically and air conditioning switches on. Outside air flows into your vehicle.*

For maximum cooling performance, press **MAX A/C**.

To aid in side window defogging and demisting in cold weather, press the floor vent button.

In mild weather, you can improve your fuel economy when using the climate control system by using outside air instead of air conditioning.

- Turn the temperature control knob(s) so the interior temperature is set to 60ºF (15.5ºC).
- Set the air distribution to panel or floor (or both).
- Press **A/C** so that **A/C OFF** appears in the display.
- Press the recirculated air button so fresh air enters the vehicle.
- Press the small fan button until the fan is at its lowest setting.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)

Heated Rear Window

Note: *You must switch the ignition on to use this feature.*

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. Press the button again to switch it off. The feature will turn off automatically after several minutes, or when you switch the ignition off.

Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window, or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines. Your warranty does not cover this damage.

Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass that has frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.*

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

The heated mirrors remove ice, mist and fog when you switch on the heated rear window.

CABIN AIR FILTER

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system*

Your cabin air filter is located under the instrument panel in the passenger footwell area. The particulate filtration system reduces the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air supplied to the interior of your vehicle.

The particulate filtration system gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See the **Scheduled Maintenance** chapter.

For more information about your filter, see an authorized dealer.

REMOTE START (IF EQUIPPED)

The climate control system adjusts the cabin temperature during remote start.

You cannot adjust the system during remote start operation. Turn the ignition on to return the system to its previous settings. You can now make adjustments. You need to turn certain vehicle-dependent features back on, such as:

- heated seats
- heated mirrors
- heated rear window.

You can adjust the settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Automatic Settings

You can set the climate control to operate in AUTO mode through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater-A/C > Auto. The climate control system automatically sets the interior temperature to 72ºF (22ºC).

In hot weather, the system is set to 72ºF (22ºC).

In moderate weather, the system either heats or cools (based on previous settings). The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated seats do not automatically turn on.

In cold weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The heated seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display). The rear defroster and heated mirrors automatically turn on.

Last Settings

You can set the climate control to operate using the last climate control settings through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater–A/C > Last Settings. The climate control system automatically uses the settings last selected before you turned off the engine.

Heated and Cooled Devices

The climate control system controls other heated and cooled devices inside the vehicle. You can switch these devices on (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information displays) during remote start. Heated devices usually switch on during cold weather, and cooled devices during hot weather.

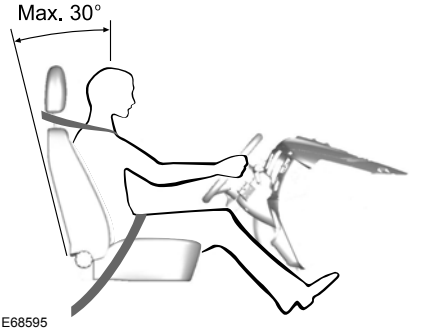
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

Do not recline the seat back as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Do not place objects higher than the seat back to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and air bags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat back more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the air bag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

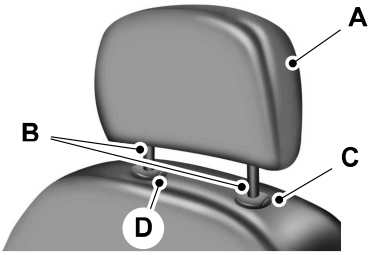
The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. An improperly adjusted head restraint may not adequately protect an occupant during an impact from the rear.

WARNINGS

Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

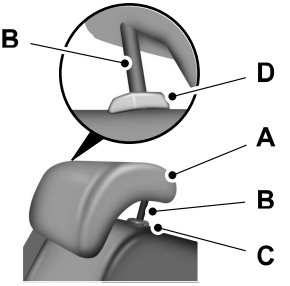
Note: *Adjust the seat back to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Front seat head restraint



E138642

Rear center seat head restraint



E138645

The head restraints consist of:

A An energy absorbing head restraint.

B Two steel stems.

C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

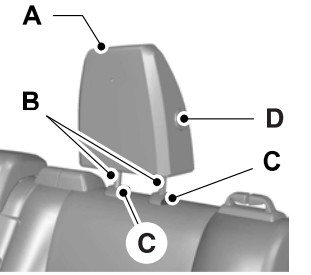
Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Rear Seat Outboard Head Restraints



E162605

The head restraints consist of:

A An energy absorbing head restraint.

B Two steel stems.

C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

D Fold button.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold buttons C.
2. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Folding the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button D.
2. Pull it back up to reset.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.

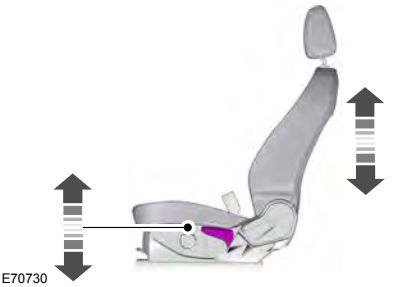
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

E162375

WARNING

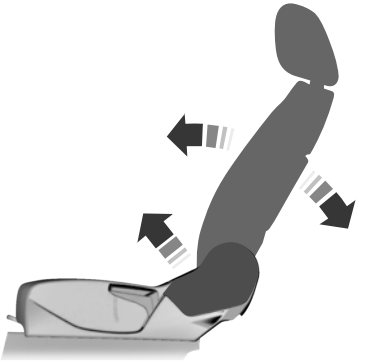
Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat



E70730

Recline Adjustment



E163872

WARNING

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seatback to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

Lumbar Adjustment (If Equipped)

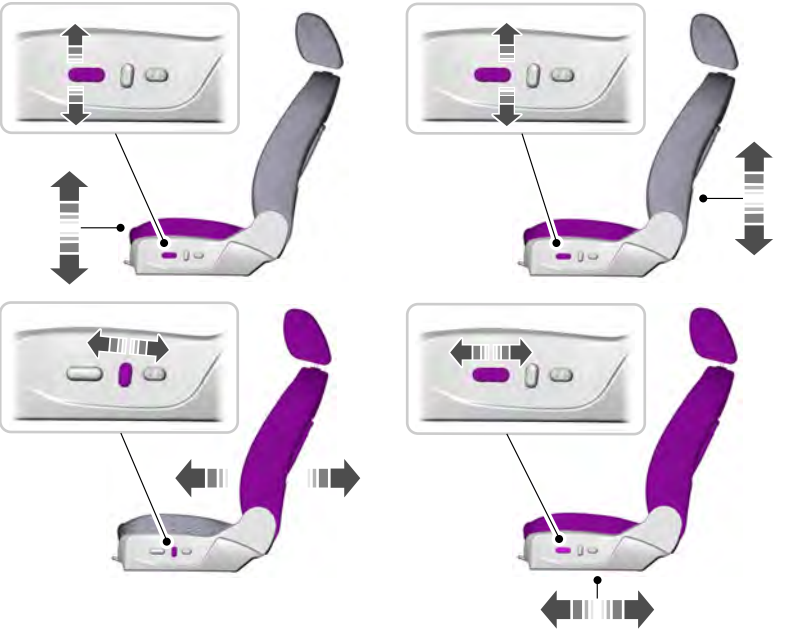
E161564

POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



E138647

Power Lumbar (If Equipped)

E138648

REAR SEATS

E155554

Folding the Seatback (If Equipped)

1. With the seat empty, press the button on the outboard side of each rear outboard headrest to fold them. Make sure the rear center headrest is in the full down position.
2. Pull the lever up on the outboard side of the seat to fold the seat.

Unfolding the Seatback

Rotate the seatback upward until the seat back latches to return the seat to the upright position.

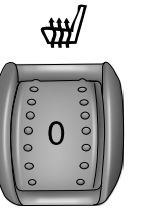
HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E138653

Adjust the control to the desired heat setting.

REAR SEAT ARMREST (IF EQUIPPED)

E138656

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.

HomeLink Wireless Control System (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Note: *Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.*

Note: *Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.*

Note: *We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See Erasing the function button codes later in this section.*

Note: *You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See Erasing the function button codes later in this section.*

E142657

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the driver's sun visor.

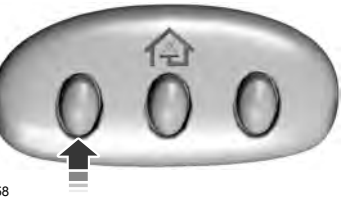
The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. As well as being programmed for garage doors, the system transmitter can be programmed to operate entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional system information can be found online at www.homelink.com or by calling the toll-free help line on 1-800-355-3515.

In-vehicle programming

This process is to program your hand-held transmitter and your in-vehicle HomeLink button.

Note: *Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This will ensure quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.*



E142658

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, turn your ignition to the **on** position, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Hold your hand-held garage door transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.

3. Using both hands, simultaneously, press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the hand-held transmitter button. DO NOT release either one until the HomeLink indicator light flashes slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. The rapid flashing indicates successful training.
4. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for five seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate, watch the HomeLink indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on, the programming is complete. See **Programming your garage door motor** later in this section.

If the indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, the HomeLink button is not programmed yet. Do the following:

Press and hold the HomeLink button while you press and release the hand-held transmitter button every 2 seconds. The HomeLink indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly once the HomeLink function button recognizes and accepts the hand-held transmitter's radio frequency signal.

After programming the HomeLink button, begin programming your garage door opener motor.

Note: *You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens on your garage door opener.*

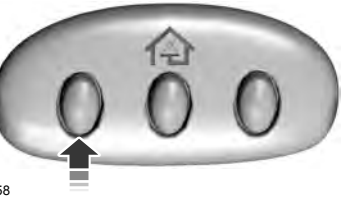
E142659

To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1 – 4.

For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming your garage door opener motor

1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.

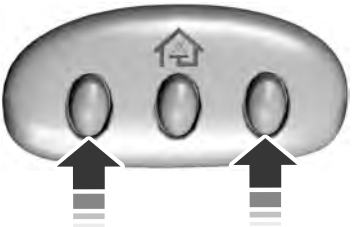


E142658

3. Press and hold the function button you want to program for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this step. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Erasing the Function Button Codes

Note: *You cannot erase individual buttons.*



E142660

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights above the buttons flash rapidly.
2. When the indicator lights flash, release the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button, follow these steps:

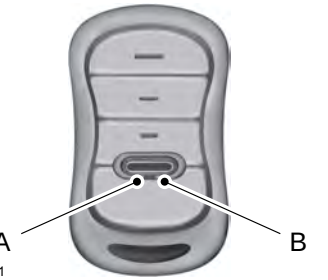
1. Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming to a Genie Intellicode 2 Garage Door Opener

Note: *The Genie Intellicode 2 transmitter must already be programmed to operate with the garage door opener.*

Note: *To program HomeLink to the transmitter you must first put the transmitter into programming mode.*



E142661

A. Red indicator light

B. Green indicator light

1. Press and hold one of the buttons on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from green to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change to programming mode. If done properly the indicator light will appear red.
3. Hold the transmitter within 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) of the button on the visor you want to program.
4. Press and hold both the programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter and the button you want to program. The indicator light on the visor will flash rapidly when the programming is successful.

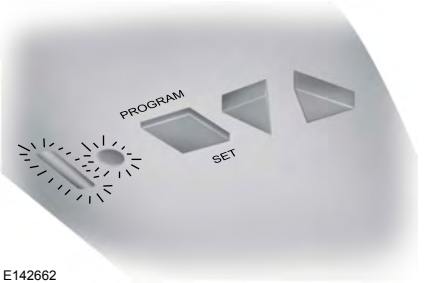
Note: *The Genie transmitter will transmit for up to 30 seconds. If HomeLink does not program within 30 seconds the Genie transmitter will need to be pressed again. If the Genie transmitter indicator light displays green and red, release the button until the indicator light turns off before pressing the button again.*

Once HomeLink has been programmed successfully, the Genie transmitter must be changed out of program mode. To do this:

1. Press and hold the previously programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from red to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change. If done correctly the indicator light will turn green.

Programming HomeLink to the Genie Intellicode Garage Door Opener Motor

Note: *You may need a ladder to access the garage door opener motor.*



E142662

1. Press and hold the program button on the garage door opener motor until both blue indicator lights turn on.
2. Release the program button. Only the smaller round indicator light should be on.
3. Press and release the program button. The larger purple indicator light will flash.

Note: *The next two steps must be completed in 30 seconds.*

4. Press and release the Genie Intellicode 2 hand-held transmitter's previously programmed button. Both indicator lights on the garage door opener motor unit should now flash purple.
5. Press and hold the previously programmed button on the visor for 2 seconds. Repeat this step up to 3 times until the garage door moves.

Programming is now complete.

Clearing a HomeLink Device

To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. The indicator light will begin flashing in 10 to 20 seconds, at which time both buttons should be released. Programming has now been erased, and the indicator light should blink slowly to indicate the device is in train mode when any of the three HomeLink buttons are pressed.

FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

12-volt DC power point

WARNING

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will discharge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.*

Note: *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.*

Note: *Improper use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be found:

- on the front of the center console
- inside the center console storage bin
- in the luggage compartment.

110-volt AC power point (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110-volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so my cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150-watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point will turn off when the ignition is switched off or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.*

E143941

The power point is used for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is located on the rear of the center console.

When the indicator light, located on the power point, is:

- on — the power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- off — the power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- flashing — the power point is in fault mode.

The power point temporarily turns off power if the 150-watt limit is exceeded. It can also switch to a fault mode when it is overloaded, overheated or has shorted. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off then on for overloading and shorting conditions. Let the system cool off, then turn the ignition off then on for an overheating condition.

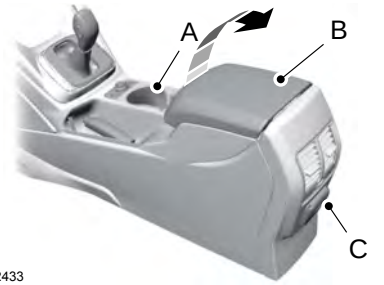
The power point is not designed for electric devices such as:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, compressor-driven refrigerators, etc.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment, measuring equipment, etc.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch-sensor lamps, etc.

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:



E142433

A	Cupholder
B	Storage compartment with auxiliary power point, auxiliary input jack, USB port and media hub
C	Auxiliary power point

OVERHEAD CONSOLE

E131605

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the vehicle.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the vehicle, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the vehicle.

IGNITION SWITCH

E72128

0 (off) - The ignition is off.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories, such as the radio, to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

II (on) - All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

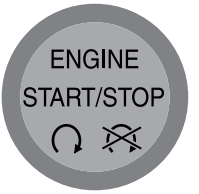
III (start) - cranks the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING

Note: *The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.*

Note: *A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the vehicle.*

Ignition Modes



E146431

The keyless starting system has three modes:

- **Off:** Turns the ignition off.
  - Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the vehicle is on but not moving.
- **On:** All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.
  - Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.
- **Start:** Starts the vehicle. The engine may not start when the vehicle starts.
  - Press the brake pedal, and then press the button until the vehicle turns on.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Before starting the vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
- Turn the ignition key to position **II**. If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Turn the key to position **III** to start the vehicle. Release the key when the vehicle starts.

Note: *Cranking may last for up to 15 seconds, or until the vehicle starts.*

Note: *If you cannot start the vehicle on the first try, wait for a short period and try again.*

Vehicles with Keyless Start

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the button.

Note: *The green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that the vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start at the time of the vehicle start. See* ***Hybrid Electric Vehicle*** *(page 129).*

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the vehicle, do the following:

3-button remote

E145988

5-button remote

E142874

1. Hold the key next to the steering column as shown.
2. With the key in this position, you can use the start button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the vehicle within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the vehicle without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the vehicle if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

Switching Off the Vehicle When It Is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.*

Switching Off the Vehicle When It Is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the vehicle when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be off.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **N** and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.

2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to position **P** and turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **N** and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave it idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 centimeters)
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.

- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Plug-in Power Mode and Hybrid Mode (C-MAX Energi Only)

You must plug C-MAX Energi vehicles in regularly for optimal use of the high voltage battery's extended range capability. When you charge your vehicle, you add electrical energy that is then used to propel the vehicle in plug-in power mode. You can view your estimated electric range in this mode from the enhanced battery gauge on the instrument panel display. The system maximizes the use of electric-only operation in plug-in power mode. System conditions may require engine operation; however, the system uses plug-in power whenever possible.

When your plug-in power has been depleted, the powertrain system will automatically switch to hybrid mode. Your battery gauge will show an electric range of zero before transitioning to a simple battery graphic upon entering hybrid mode. Hybrid mode uses both the gasoline engine and electric motor to power your vehicle and maximize fuel economy as with C-MAX Hybrid.

EV Modes (C-MAX Energi Only)

EV

Your vehicle contains selectable EV modes through the EV button on the center console.

These modes are available when the vehicle can run under high voltage battery power. With the vehicle in driving mode, you can change EV modes with each press of the EV button. The current mode will be displayed in the left hand instrument cluster screen.

Auto EV

AUTO

This mode provides an automatic use of high voltage battery power during the drive, staying in electric mode when possible and running the engine when needed. This mode will be the only one available if the plug-in power has been depleted.

EV Now

EV

This mode provides an electric only driving experience. The left-hand information display will change to an Energy Use screen that supplies EV specific tools and functions.

The vehicle may accelerate more slowly and the top speed may be lower than in Auto mode. Your engine may be enabled at any time by using one of the following methods:

1. Press the OK button on the left 5–way steering wheel control while viewing the EV screen. The vehicle will enable the engine as needed, and will automatically return to EV Now after eight seconds or when the engine is no longer needed.
2. Press the accelerator pedal fully. A pop up message stating **Press OK to Enable Engine** will appear. Press OK on the left steering wheel button to activate as needed. The message will disappear if you release the accelerator pedal.
3. Press the EV button. This will change the mode to EV Later and permit engine operation.

The vehicle may automatically enter Engine Enabled mode if system conditions require it. A message **Engine Enabled for System Performance** will display if this occurs. This is normal function, and your vehicle will return to EV Now when possible.

The vehicle may enter Enable Engine mode if the climate control is in a defrost mode and the outside temperature is cold. A message **Engine Enabled Due to Defrost** will display if this occurs. If defrost is not needed, select a different climate control mode to permit EV Now.

When you enable EV Now, a blue EV icon displays in the left-hand information display. If the vehicle is in the Engine Enabled mode, the EV icon will be yellow.

EV Now will automatically exit when the Plug in power has been depleted.

EV Later

This mode saves most of the high voltage battery plug in power for future use (for example, your initial drive is at high speeds on open roads, but later your drive will be at low speeds in an urban area where plug-in power usage is most efficient). Your vehicle will run the engine as needed and keep most of the high voltage battery plug in power for later use in Auto Mode or EV Now mode.

When you enable EV Later, a white EV Later icon appears on the left-hand information display.

The EV Later mode will automatically reset to EV Auto mode when you power the vehicle off. You may press the EV button twice during the next drive to return to EV Later mode, if desired.

Hybrid Vehicle Operation (C-MAX Hybrid and C-MAX Energi)

This hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide breakthrough performance and improved efficiency. Familiarizing yourself with these unique characteristics will provide an optimal driving experience from your new vehicle.

Note: *You may notice higher engine speeds upon start-up. This temporary condition is normal and necessary to heat up the cabin and minimize emissions.*

Starting: When you start your vehicle, a green ready indicator light will appear in the lower right portion of the instrument cluster and a ready to drive message will appear in the middle of the left cluster screen, letting you know that the vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because this vehicle is equipped with silent key start. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready–to–drive without requiring the gas engine to be running. This indicator will remain on while the vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not to indicate the vehicle is capable of movement (using its electric motor, engine, or both). Typically, the engine will not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested, or the accelerator is pressed.

Driving: The gas engine automatically starts and stops to provide power when needed and to save fuel when not needed. While coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop, or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and the vehicle operates in electric-only mode. Conditions that may cause the engine to start up or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration
- Vehicle speed above 85 mph (137 km/h) However, the maximum speed for electric-only operation may be lower while driving in hot temperatures or on hilly terrain.
- Ascending a hill
- Charge level of high voltage battery is low

- Very high or low outside temperature (to provide system cooling or heating) For C-MAX Energi vehicles, climate control demands by passengers may not directly cause the engine to run. This only occurs when the high voltage battery charge is low, or if the outside temperature is cold enough to require the engine to provide additional heat for the cabin.
- Engine not warm enough to provide passenger requested cabin temperature.

Stopping: The gas engine may shut off to conserve fuel as you come to a stop. Restarting the vehicle is not required. Simply step on the accelerator when you are ready to drive.

Transmission Operation: Due to the technologically advanced, electronically-controlled continuously variable transaxle, you will not feel shift changes like those of a non-hybrid vehicle.

Note: *Since engine speed is controlled by the transmission, it may seem elevated at times. This is normal hybrid operation and helps deliver fuel efficiency and performance.*

Neutral: It is not recommended to idle the vehicle in position **N** for an extended period of time because this will discharge your high voltage battery and decrease fuel economy. The engine will not start or stop, and cannot provide power to the hybrid system in position **N**.

Low Gear: Low gear (position **L**) is designed to mimic the enhanced engine braking available in non-hybrid vehicles. Low gear will produce high engine speeds to provide necessary engine braking. This is normal and will not damage your vehicle. In low gear, the gas engine will remain on more often than in position **D.**

Reverse: In position **R**, vehicle speed is limited to 22 mph (35 km/h).

Unique Hybrid Operating Characteristics

Your vehicle behaves differently compared to a non-hybrid. Here is a description of the major differences:

Battery: Your hybrid is equipped with a high voltage battery. A cool battery ensures battery life and provides the best possible performance. Your hybrid high voltage battery may periodically re-condition itself to ensure maximum efficiency. You may notice slight changes in driveability during this process, but it is an important part of your hybrid's high voltage battery optimization features.

The high voltage battery is cooled by cabin air drawn from vent holes in the trim panels behind the rear seats. Avoid placing objects at the vent holes that block airflow to the high voltage battery.

Engine: The engine speed in your hybrid is not directly tied to your vehicle speed. Your vehicle's engine and transmission are designed to deliver the power you need at the most efficient engine speed. During heavy accelerations, your hybrid may reach high engine speeds (up to 6000 RPM).

In prolonged mountainous driving, you may see the engine tachometer changing without your input. This is intentional and maintains the battery charge level. You may also notice during extended downhill driving that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off.

During this engine braking, the engine stays on, but it is not using any fuel. You may also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric generator in the hybrid system.

During certain events (such as vehicle servicing) your low voltage 12-volt battery may become disconnected or disabled. Once the battery is reconnected and after driving the vehicle, the engine may continue to operate for three to five seconds after the key is turned to off. This is a normal condition.

Braking: Your hybrid is equipped with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and it captures brake energy and stores it in your high voltage battery.

Driving to optimize fuel economy

Note: *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your fuel economy should improve throughout your hybrid's break-in period. As with any vehicle, your driving habits and accessory usage can significantly impact your fuel economy. For best results, keep in mind these tips:

- Keep the tires properly inflated and only use the recommended size.
- Aggressive driving increases the amount of energy required to move your vehicle. In general, you can achieve better fuel economy with mild to moderate acceleration and deceleration. Moderate braking is particularly important since it allows you to maximize the energy captured by the regenerative braking system.

Additional Tips:

- Do not carry extra loads.
- Be mindful of adding external accessories that may increase aerodynamic drag.
- Observe posted speed limits.
- Perform all scheduled maintenance.
- There is no need to wait for your engine to warm up. The vehicle is ready to drive immediately after starting.

EV+ Mode

Your vehicle will recognize your frequent destinations and allow for more EV driving as you approach them. For example, when nearing your home it should be easier to stay in electric mode. The EV indicator will display EV+ when this mode is active. You should see this approximately 1/8 mile (200 meters) from a frequent destination. See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Note: *Frequent destinations are learned by your vehicle after two to four weeks of use. You can clear these destinations with a Driving History reset through the Settings menu.*

Note: *The EV+ feature can be turned on or off through the Driver Assist section of the Settings menu.*

Frequently asked questions

Question	Answer
What are the series of clicks from the cargo area when I first turn the key in the ignition?	The high voltage battery is electrically isolated from the rest of the vehicle when the key is off. When you turn the key on, high voltage contactors inside the battery are closed to make the electricity available to the motor/generator and enable the vehicle to drive. The clicks are the sound of these contactors as they close and open during start up and shut down.
Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?	The vehicle's computer will determine if an engine start is required at key-on. Silent key start will start the engine if it is necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, or if the outside temperature is low. (For C-MAX Energi vehicles, the engine may not be required to operate these functions.)
Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?	There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to ensure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emissions. As the climate gets cooler, this engine-on time is extended.
Why does my engine never shut down above 85 mph (137 km/h)	The engine is required to turn on above this speed to protect the transmission hardware.
Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?	In order to ensure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.

Question	Answer
Why does my engine rev up so high sometimes when I accelerate?	Your vehicle's engine and transmission are designed to deliver the power you need at the most efficient engine speed. This may be higher than expected during heavy accelerations, and may fluctuate during steady state driving. These are characteristics of the Atkinson engine cycle and the transmission technology that help maximize your hybrid's fuel economy.
What is the fan noise I hear from the rear of my hybrid?	The fan noise comes from a fan located next to the high voltage battery pack. This fan turns on when the battery requires cooling air. The fan speed, and associated noise level, will change according to the amount of cooling required to maintain good performance. Maintaining the battery temperature at optimal conditions also prolongs the useful life of the battery and helps to achieve better fuel economy.
What is the engine oil change service interval?	Change the engine oil every 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) or once per year under normal operating conditions.
Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?	Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).
How long will my high voltage battery last? Does it need maintenance?	The high voltage battery system is designed to last the life of the vehicle and requires no maintenance.
Can you charge the battery with a plug into an A/C outlet?	There are no provisions for charging the high voltage battery from a power supply external to the vehicle. (For C-MAX Energi vehicles, the vehicle can be plugged into a 110-volt outlet with charge cord provided.)
Can I tow the hybrid behind my motor home with all four wheels down?	Yes. Your hybrid vehicle can be flat towed without modification. See **Towing** (page 182).

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

FUEL QUALITY

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance and repairs may not be covered under warranty.*

Choosing the Right Fuel

Use only UNLEADED gasoline or UNLEADED gasoline blended with a maximum of 15% ethanol in your gasoline vehicle. If your vehicle is a Flex Fuel Vehicle (FFV), it will have a yellow bezel placed over the fuel fill inlet.

Do not use:

- fuels containing more than 15% ethanol or E-85 fuel
- fuels containing methanol
- fuels containing metallic based additives, including manganese-based compounds
- fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT)
- leaded-fuel (The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law)

Note: *Use of any fuel other than the recommended fuel can cause powertrain damage, impair the emission control system or cause loss of vehicle performance. Any damage to the vehicle that is caused by the use of fuel not recommended will not be covered under warranty.*

Octane Recommendations

Regular unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as regular with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

Fuel Freshness Mode (Energi Vehicles Only)

This feature helps keeps the fuel system functional and the fuel fresh.

If you operate your vehicle mainly in plug-in power mode using electricity from plugging in without refueling, the gasoline in your tank eventually becomes old. Old fuel can damage the engine and fuel system.

To prevent the fuel from becoming old, your vehicle will automatically enter fuel freshness mode. In fuel freshness mode operates, your vehicle will operate in hybrid mode causing the gasoline engine to run in order to consume the fuel in the fuel tank.

Note: *If new fuel is not added during an 18 month period, fuel freshness mode will consume fuel until about 1 gallon (3.8 liters) is left in the tank.*

During fuel freshness mode:

- The information display screen will indicate that fuel freshness mode is active.
- The vehicle will only run in hybrid mode. EV Now will not be available.
- Most of the plug-in power will be stored until fuel freshness mode is completed.

Note: *EV Now can resume if less than 1 gallon (3.8 liters) of fuel is left in the tank.*

Note: *In most cases, when the fuel level is below 1/4 tank, refueling the vehicle will end fuel freshness mode and EV Now will now become available. Refueling after consuming a full tank in fuel freshness mode will end the mode.*

Note: *It is recommended to use a fuel stabilizer if you consume less than a full tank of fuel during an 18 month period.*

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8 liters) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8 liters) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, See **Symbols Glossary** (page 7).

Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.*

When filling the vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with the vehicle.

E162448

In C-MAX vehicles, the funnel is located in the rear of the vehicle inside the load compartment.

E162449

In C-MAX Energi vehicles the funnel is located in the rear of the vehicle, inside storage compartment

1. Locate the portable funnel that comes with your vehicle.

E142668

2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.

E145428

3. Fill the vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.

Note: *For C-MAX Energi vehicles, press the fuel button located on the instrument panel before performing step 3.*

4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

WARNINGS

Switch off your vehicle when you are refueling.

Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle.

Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.

Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.

Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.

Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place an approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

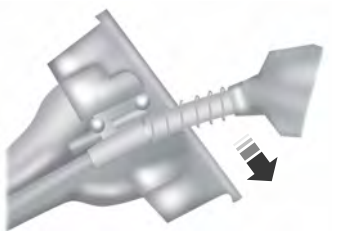
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System (Non-Energi Vehicles)

WARNING

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

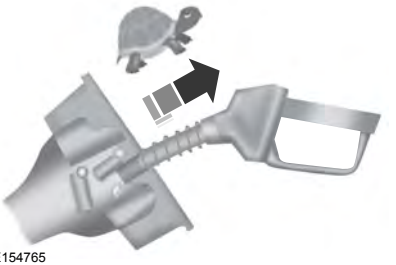
When fueling your vehicle:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P) and switch the ignition off.
2. Open the fuel filler door.



E156032

3. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system, and leave the nozzle fully inserted to open both doors until pumping is complete. Hold the handle higher during insertion for easier access.



E154765

4. Once pumping is complete, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle. Allow approximately five to ten seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.

Note: *A fuel spill concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank to the point that the fuel is able to bypass the fuel filler nozzle. The overfilled fuel may run down the drain located below and in front of the fuel filler door.*

If you did not close the fuel fill inlet properly, a **Check Fuel Fill Inlet** message may appear in the information display.

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Safely pull off the road.
2. Put the vehicle in park (P) and switch the ignition off.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to dislodge any debris and allow the inlet to close properly.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

Easy Fuel™ Capless System (Energi Vehicles Only)

WARNING

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

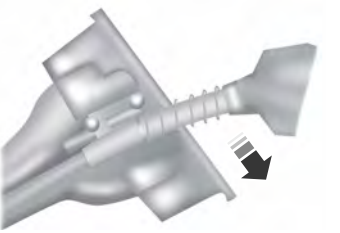
Note: *Your vehicle features a locking fuel door and an auto-sealing feature that locks the fuel tank refueling valve. Before you can refuel your vehicle, you must first press the button located on the center console. Pressing this button will unlock the fuel tank refueling valve allowing the fuel filler door to open so that you can insert the fuel filler nozzle into the fuel inlet. This could take up to fifteen seconds before the fuel filler door pops open allowing the insertion of the fuel filler nozzle.*

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P) and switch the ignition off.
2. Press the fuel button located on the center console.

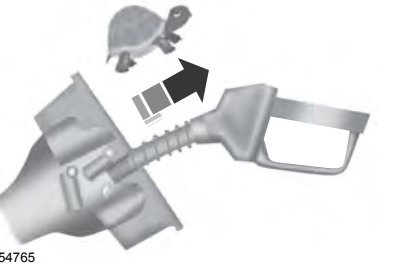
E145428

3. Wait up to fifteen seconds before opening the fuel filler door. During this time, a **Fuel Door Opening** message will appear in the information display screen.
4. When the door is open, a **Fuel Door Open** message will appear in the information display en indicating that your vehicle is ready to refuel. The vehicle will remain ready to refuel for approximately 20 minutes. If more than 20 minutes is required, you will need to press the refueling button again. You may experience the fuel pump turn off if you do not press the refuel button again.
5. Open the fuel filler door.



E156032

6. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system and leave the nozzle fully inserted to open both doors until pumping is complete. Hold the handle higher while inserting for easier access.



E154765

7. After pumping fuel, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle. Allow approximately five to ten seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.

Note: *A fuel spill concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank to the point that the fuel is able to bypass the fuel filler nozzle. The overfilled fuel may run down the drain located below and in front of the fuel filler door.*

If you did not close the fuel fill inlet properly, a **Check Fuel Fill Inlet** message may appear on the information display. At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Safely pull off the road.
2. Put the vehicle in park (P) and switch the ignition off.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel, provided with the vehicle, several times to dislodge any debris and allow the inlet to close properly.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

Using the manual override lever

WARNING

The fuel system may be under pressure. Insert the fuel nozzle slowly. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Note: *The vehicle must be in park (P) when using the manual override feature.*

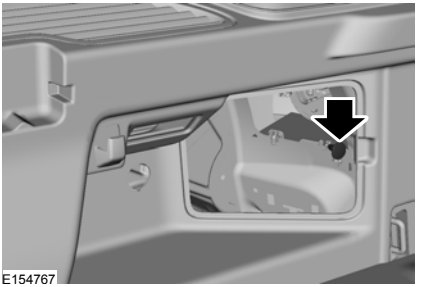
The manual override lever is located inside of the luggage compartment on the right rear side panel.

When using the fuel door manual override to access the fuel fill inlet:

1. Switch the ignition on prior to using the manual override.
2. Remove the panel located in luggage compartment on the right rear area of the vehicle hatch.

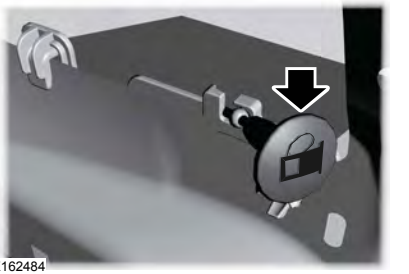
E162486

3. Locate the manual override mechanism.



E154767

4. Pull the manual override mechanism.



E162484

5. Key off and complete refueling within 20 minutes. If more than 20 minutes is required, close fuel door and repeat the procedure.

This will enable you to refuel without any issue.

Note: *A fuel spill concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank to the point that the fuel is able to bypass the fuel filler nozzle. The overfilled fuel may run down the drain located below and in front of the fuel filler door.*

If you did not close the fuel fill inlet properly, a **Check Fuel Fill Inlet** message may appear in the information display. At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Safely pull off the road.
2. Put the vehicle in park (P) and turn the ignition off.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to allow the inlet to close properly. This will dislodge any debris preventing the inlet from sealing.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city and highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Note: *The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.*

Empty reserve is the amount of fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty. Do not rely on this fuel for driving. The usable capacity of the fuel tank is the amount of fuel that can be put into the tank after the gauge indicates empty. The advertised capacity is the total fuel tank size – it is the combined usable capacity plus the empty reserve.

Filling the Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period); a more accurate measurement is obtained after 2000 miles - 3000 miles (3200 kilometers - 4800 kilometers). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter that will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle.

When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed. See **Refueling** (page 138).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition Off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

GENERAL INFORMATION

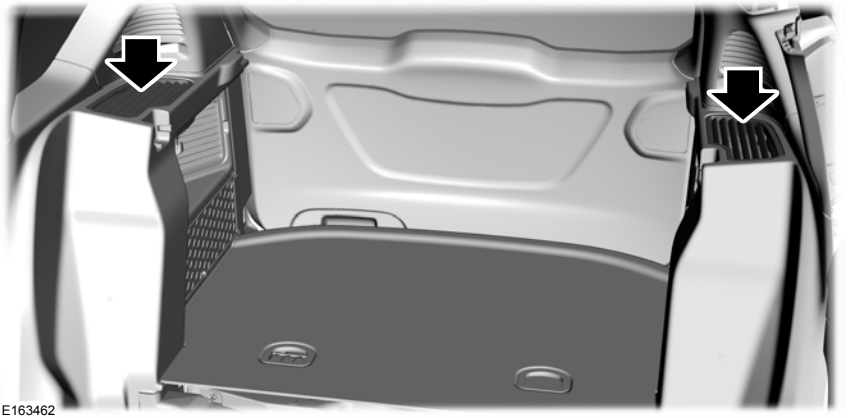
WARNING

Have the battery pack serviced only by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The high-voltage battery does not require regular service maintenance.*

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, orange striped tape or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

The high-voltage battery system is a high-voltage, lithium-ion battery system. The pack is located in the rear cargo area. The high-voltage battery system uses an air cooled system to regulate the high-voltage battery temperature and help maximize high-voltage battery life.



E163462

Note: *The high-voltage battery is equipped with air vents in the package tray that help to regulate its temperature. It is important to keep these openings free of obstructions. Do not block the flow of cabin air to this area.*

HIGH-VOLTAGE SERVICE DISCONNECT

The high-voltage service disconnect turns off power from the high-voltage battery.

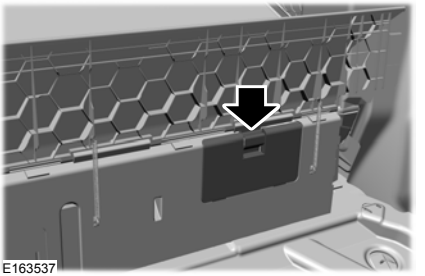
Note: *There is a disconnect circuit in your vehicle. Disconnecting the circuit will automatically disable the high-voltage battery.*

To disable the battery and stop all high-voltage electric activity in the vehicle you can access high-voltage disconnect circuit. To do this, you must unplug the circuit from the circuit port connected to the battery.

Note: *The service disconnect has an outer lever to aid in the proper seating of the service disconnect lever. Remove this to disconnect the high-voltage service disconnect.*

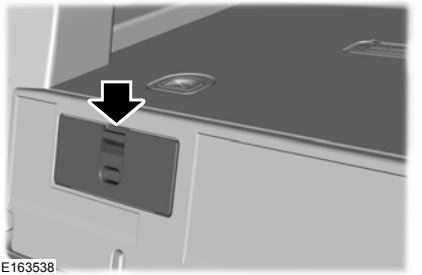
The high-voltage service disconnect is located behind the rear fold down seats.

Service disconnect location for non-Energi vehicles.



E163537

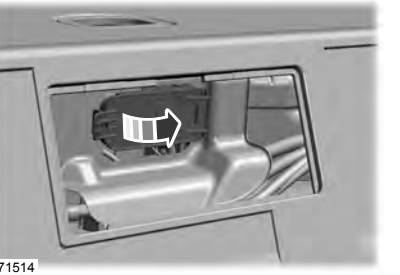
Service disconnect location for Energi vehicles.



E163538

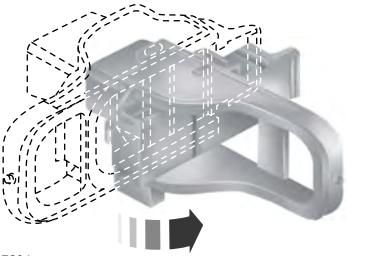
Disabling the High-Voltage Battery

1. Fold down the rear seats and remove the cover panel.
2. Locate the access door and remove the plastic cover.



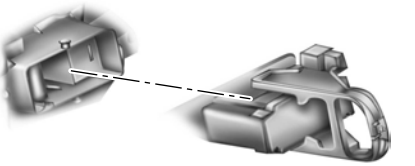
E171514

3. If equipped, pull the end of the outer lever toward the front of the vehicle and remove the outer lever from the service disconnect.



E147234

4. Slide the handle on the service disconnect outboard to the right. For Energi vehicles, slide the handle outboard and to the left.



E146133

5. Pull the handle toward you and remove the service disconnect from the vehicle to disable the high-voltage battery.

Reactivating the High-Voltage Battery

Note: *If you have manually disconnected your high-voltage shut off circuit, you will need to reconnect the circuit before you can reactivate it. The system will detect if the electrical system is safe and turn on automatically.*

CHARGING THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY (IF EQUIPPED)

CHARGING THE HIGH-VOLTAGE BATTERY (ENERGI VEHICLES)

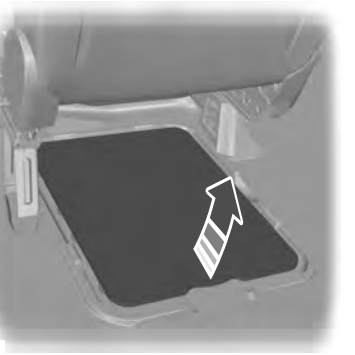
WARNINGS

Do not use the 120-volt convenience cord with an extension cord or adapter.

In Canada, do not use the 120-volt convenience cord in commercial garages.

This equipment has arcing or sparking parts, do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 18 inches (80 millimeters) above the floor.

Charging Equipment



E78097

Your vehicle is equipped with a standard 120-volt convenience cord located in the floor compartment behind the driver seat.

Note: *The 120-volt convenience cord allows you to charge the high-voltage battery using a standard 120-volt household outlet. Using the standard 120-volt convenience cord takes approximately 7 hours to completely charge from an empty battery.*

E145429

Ford recommends upgrading to the optional 240-volt charging station for faster more efficient charging. Using a 240-volt charging station will take approximately 2 ½ hours to fully charge an empty battery.

Note: *Your electrical source must meet certain requirements for the high-voltage batteries to charge. The AC outlet must be a three-prong 110-120 volt AC outlet that is properly grounded, 15–20 amps (or greater), and in good condition. You must use a dedicated line, which means you cannot have other appliances connected to the same circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.*

Make sure that the 120–volt convenience cord is completely unwound before charging. Always plug the cord into the AC outlet before connecting the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle of your vehicle. The 120–volt convenience cord inline control box has three indicator lights that represent the charging status, power, charge and fault.

Power (green light) — this indicator lights up when you plug the cord into the AC wall outlet.

Charge (green light) — indicates status of charging:

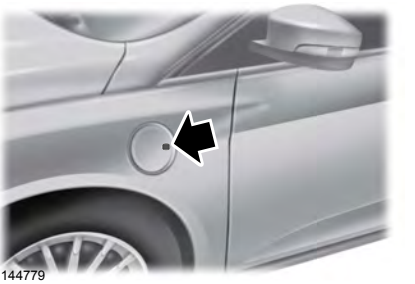
- No light means you have not connected the cord to the vehicle.
- Blinking light means that the charging is in process.
- Solid light means you have connected the cord, but the vehicle is not charging.

Fault (red triangle light) — Lights up in case of a detected failure. No charging is possible:

- Blinking red triangle light – means that the 120–volt convenience cord is trying to reset the failure and could restart the charging cycle.
- Solid red triangle light – means that the fault is permanent. You need to unplug the cord and then plug it back in to reset the fault. If the fault persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charge Port

The charge port is located between the front left side door and front left wheel well. There is an indentation located on the charge port door. Press in and release with your thumb to open and close the door.


E144779

Note: *Do not force the charge port door open or closed. Forcing the door open or closed will damage the charge port.*

The light ring located around the charge port indicates the charge status of the high-voltage battery in your vehicle. Divided into four quadrants, the charge port light ring displays the state of charge in 25 percent increments.

There is a cord acknowledgment feature that activates when you initiate a charge cycle. The four light quadrants will each individually flash clockwise starting with the top right light and ending with the top left, two full times, confirming the system detects the charging coupler.

Use your key fob to view the charge status of your vehicle at any time by pressing the unlock button. The light ring will light up the corresponding quadrant(s) so that the current state of charge can be determined. If the charge is below 25 percent, the light ring will not light. Do not forget to press the lock button on your key fob to re-lock your vehicle.

The light ring will also display the current state of charge when opening the doors.

Charging

Note: *Your vehicle must be in **P** (PARK) to charge.*

To charge your high-voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park and power down your vehicle.
2. With your thumb, press in and release the indentation located on the charge port door and the door will rotate open.
3. Plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle. Make sure the button clicks confirming you have completely engaged the coupler.

E144780

4. Verify that the cord acknowledgment feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.
5. If using a 240-volt charging station, follow the instructions on the charge station to begin the charging process.

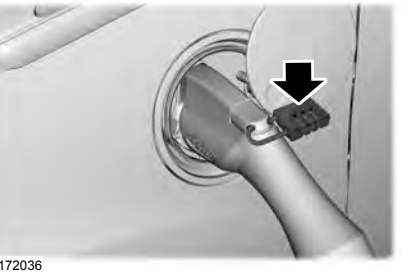
The light ring will display how far along the charge is:

- When the top right quadrant is pulsing, the charge is between 0-25 percent.
- When the top right quadrant light is on and the bottom right quadrant is pulsing, the charge is between 25-50 percent.
- When the light on both right side quadrants are on and the bottom left quadrant is pulsing, the charge is between 50-75 percent.
- When the light on three quadrants are on and the top left quadrant is pulsing, the charge is between 75-100 percent.
- When all the lights on the entire ring are on, the charge is complete.

Note: *The light ring will turn off one minute after reaching a full charge.*

Locking the Charging Coupler

Note: *You will need a padlock or a combination lock with a shackle diameter of 0.2 in (5 mm) or less and the straight portion of the shackle of 1.0 in (25.4 mm) length or more.*



E172036

1. Insert the lock through the hole in the charging coupler button.
2. Lock the padlock or combination lock.

Waiting to Charge

Note: *See Charge Settings in the MyFord Touch section. See **MyFord Touch™** (page 322).*

When you select Value Charge, charging may not begin upon plugging in. The vehicle may delay charging to take advantage of off-peak electricity rates. The vehicle will optimize the charge schedule to be complete by the next GO Time.

When waiting to charge (not actively charging), the light ring will indicate the present state of charge of the high voltage battery as follows:

- When the top right quadrant light is off, the charge is between 0–25 percent.
- When the top right quadrant light is on and the bottom right quadrant is off, the charge is between 25–50 percent.
- When both right side quadrant lights are on and the bottom left quadrant is off, the charge is between 50–75 percent.
- When three quadrant lights are on and the top left quadrant is off, the charge is between 75–100 percent.
- When all lights on the entire ring are on, the charge is 100 percent.

Note: *When the vehicle is waiting to charge, the light ring will turn off one minute after displaying the present state of charge. When the vehicle automatically begins charging, the light ring will turn on and display how far along the charge is per the section above.*

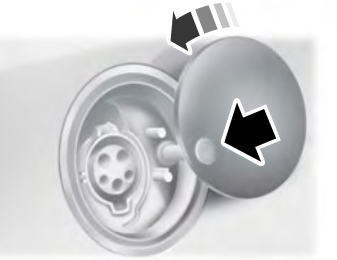
Note: *If the system detects a vehicle charging system fault at any point in a charge cycle, the entire light ring will flash continuously for one minute and then turn off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealer.*

You can modify the light ring lighting conditions. See Charge Port Light Ring Settings in the MyFord Touch section. See **MyFord Touch™** (page 322).

Disconnecting the Charging Coupler

Note: *Do not pull the wall plug from the wall while the vehicle is charging. Doing so may damage the outlet and the cord.*

1. Remove the lock from the charging coupler button.
2. Press the button on the charging coupler.
3. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



E144781

4. Close the charge port door by pressing the indentation on the charge port door. Continue pressing the indentation while the door rotates counterclockwise and closes.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY CUT-OFF SWITCH

The high-voltage shut off operation shuts off power from the high-voltage battery after a collision, or if your vehicle receives a substantial physical jolt.

To reactivate the vehicle after either event perform the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. If the vehicle is not powered after this sequence, repeat steps 1 and 2.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to turn ignition off.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button.

3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button (ignition off).
4. Press the **START/STOP** button again to re-enable the vehicle.

Note: *After completing this process the vehicle will detect if the electrical system is safe and reactivate. Once your vehicle determines the electrical system safe you can start your vehicle as you would normally by pressing the brake in combination with the* ***START/STOP*** *button.*

Note: *In the event the vehicle does not reactivate after the second key cycle, contact an authorized dealer.*

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in **P** (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the button on the front of the gearshift lever.
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
4. Release the button and your transmission will remain in the selected gear.

E144820

P (Park)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning. Come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of **P** (Park)

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in **R** (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of **R** (Reverse).

N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in **N** (Neutral), the vehicle is free to roll; hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

D (Drive)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

D (Drive) with Grade Assist (If Equipped)

Press the transmission control switch on the side of the gearshift lever to activate grade assist.

E146092

Grade assist:

- Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a grade.
- As the vehicle determines the amount of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging, you may notice the engine speed increasing and decreasing to help maintain your vehicle speed when descending a grade.
- The grade assist lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

The grade assist lamp will appear in the instrument cluster when grade assist is turned on.

Press the transmission control switch again to return to normal **D** (Drive).

L (Low)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- The transmission may be shifted into **L** (Low) at any vehicle speed.

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

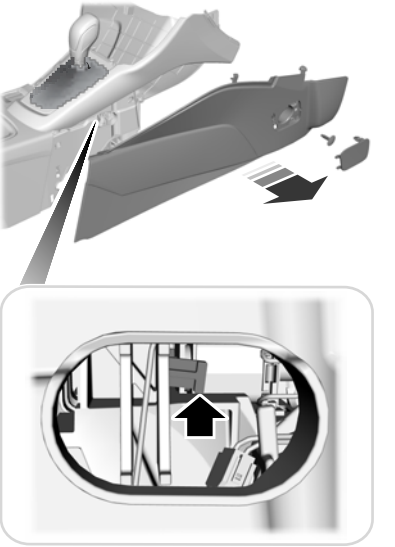
If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Note: *See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.*

Note: *For some markets this feature will be disabled.*

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition off before performing this procedure.



E162619

1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.
2. Locate the access hole.
3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever foreword while pulling the gearshift lever out of the **P** (Park) position and into the **N** (Neutral) position.

4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning the Alloy Wheels*** *(page 236).*

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 83).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P,** switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If the system is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Regenerative Braking System

This feature is used to simulate the engine braking of an internal combustion engine and assist the standard brake system while recovering some of the energy of motion and storing it in the battery to improve fuel economy. The standard brake system is designed to fully stop the car if regenerative braking is not available. During regenerative braking, the motor is spun as a generator to create electrical current. This recharges the battery and slows the vehicle. In effect, once the accelerator pedal is released, the motor changes from an energy user to an energy producer.

When the accelerator pedal is released or the brake pedal is applied, the brake controller automatically detects the amount of deceleration requested and optimizes how much of the deceleration will be produced by regenerative braking. The remaining portion is generated by standard friction braking. When the battery is almost fully charged, the amount of regenerative braking is limited to avoid overcharging, and the requested deceleration is produced by standard friction braking alone.

Regenerative braking does not take the place of the standard friction brakes; it only assists them. Regenerative braking has also been designed to interact with the anti-lock brake system. Regenerative braking is disabled when the anti-lock brake system is activated or the battery is fully charged.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- you drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you
- your vehicle is hydroplaning
- you take corners too fast
- the road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position **P**.

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, move the transmission selector lever to position **P** and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, move the transmission selector lever to **P** and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and put the transmission in park (P).

You must remain in your vehicle once you have activated the system.

During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNINGS

If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected, the system will be deactivated.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

The system will activate automatically on any slope that will cause significant vehicle rollback.

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will release automatically.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

In certain situations for example, stuck in snow or mud, turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Depending on the type of system you have on your vehicle, you can either turn the system off using the information display or by pressing the button.

Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls

(If Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **Principle of Operation** (page 159).

Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The button is located in the instrument panel.

Press the button. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the button again to return the system to normal mode.

When you switch the traction control system off, stability control remains fully active.

System Indicator Lights and Messages

WARNING

If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac system was not manually disabled through the information display. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.

The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you turn the traction control system off.

When you turn the traction control system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

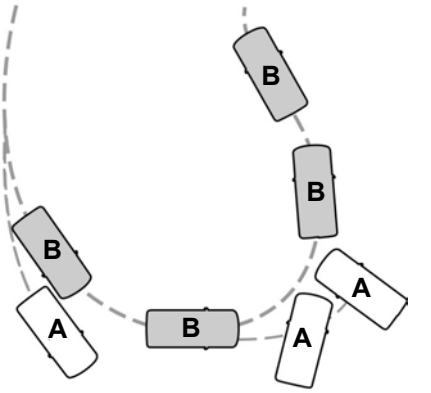
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The AdvanceTrac with Roll Stability Control system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides and roll stability control helps avoid a vehicle rollover. The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. See **Using Traction Control** (page 159).



E72903

A Vehicle without AdvanceTrac with RSC skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with AdvanceTrac with RSC maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)

The system automatically activates when you start your vehicle. The AdvanceTrac with RSC system cannot be completely turned off, but the electronic stability control and roll stability control portions of the system are disabled when the transmission is in position **R.** You can turn off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 159).

PARKING AID (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

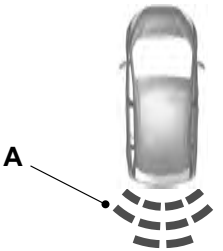
Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with MyKey®, it is possible to prevent turning the sensing system off. See* ***MyKey™*** *(page 49).*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area. The system turns on automatically whenever the ignition is switched on.

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume is reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.

Rear Sensing System

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in R (Reverse). As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is fewer than 12 inches (30 centimeters) away, the warning sounds continuously. If a stationary or receding object is detected farther than 12 inches (30 centimeters) from the side of the vehicle, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.



E130178

A Coverage area of up to 6 feet (1.8 meters) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

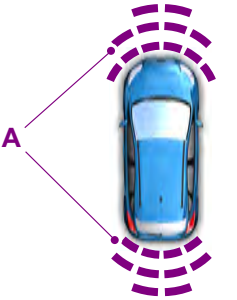
The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in R (Reverse):

- and moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- but not moving, and a moving object is approaching the rear of the vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less

The system can be switched off through the information display. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow the driver to switch the faulted system on.

Front Sensing System

The front sensors are active when the gearshift is in any position other than P (Park) or N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).



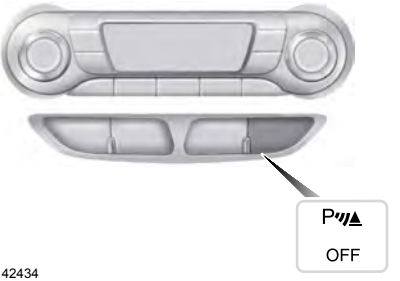
E130382

A Coverage area of up to 27 inches (70 centimeters) from the front of the vehicle and about 14 inches (35 centimeters) to the side of the front end of the vehicle. Refer to the reverse sensing section for details on coverage area.

The system sounds an audible warning when obstacles are near either bumper in the following manner:

- Objects detected by the front sensors are indicated by a high-pitched tone from the front radio speakers.
- Objects detected by the rear sensors are indicated by a lower pitched tone from the rear radio speakers.
- The sensing system reports the obstacle which is closest to the front or rear of the vehicle. For example, if an obstacle is 24 inches (60 centimeters) from the front of the vehicle and, at the same time, an obstacle is only 16 inches (40 centimeters) from the rear of the vehicle, the lower pitched tone sounds.
- An alternating warning sounds from the front and rear if there are objects at both bumpers that are closer than 10 inches (25 centimeters).

For specific information on the reverse sensing portion of the system, refer to that section.



E142434

Press the button to switch the system off. It will remain off for the entire ignition cycle. The system can also be switched off through the information display.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING

This system is designed to be a supplementary park aid. It may not work in all conditions and is not intended to replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the system is in use.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.*

The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers the vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to park the vehicle.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (i.e. a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high from the ground (i.e. a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.*

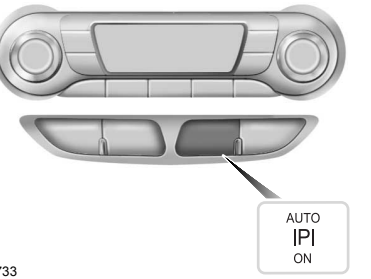
Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.*

Note: *After a tire change the system will go through a relearning procedure. During this time the system performance may deteriorate.*

The system should not be used if:

- a foreign object (i.e. bike rack or trailer) is attached to the front or rear of the vehicle or at another location close to the sensors.
- an overhanging object (i.e. surfboard) is attached to the roof.
- the front bumper or side sensors are damaged (i.e. in a collision) or obstructed by a foreign object (i.e. front bumper cover).
- a mini-spare tire is in use.

Using Active Park Assist



E142733

Press the button. The touch screen displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it's searching for a parking space. Use the turn signal to indicate which side of the vehicle you want the system to search on.

Note: *If the turn signal is not on, the system automatically searches on the vehicle's passenger side.*

When a suitable space is found, the touch screen displays a message and a chime sounds. Slow down and stop at approximately position (A), then follow the instructions on the touch screen.

Note: *You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.*

Note: *Vehicles with overhanging loads (e.g. a bus or a truck), street furniture and other items may not be detected by active park assist. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.*

Note: *The vehicle should be driven as parallel to other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.*

Note: *The system always offers the last detected parking space (i.e. if the vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).*

Note: *If driven above approximately 20 mph (35 km/h), the touch screen shows a message to alert you to reduce vehicle speed.*

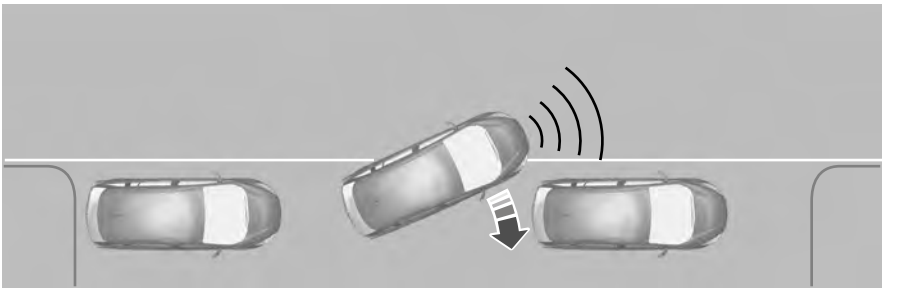
Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: *If vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the system switches off and you need to take full control of the vehicle.*

Note: *If a maneuver is interrupted before completion, the system switches off. The steering wheel position will not indicate the actual position of the steering and you have to full take control of the vehicle.*

With your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement) and the transmission in R (Reverse), the vehicle steers itself as instructions to safely move the vehicle back and forward in the space are displayed in the touch screen. While reversing, the touch screen displays a message instructing you to check your surroundings (for safety reasons) and to back-up slowly, accompanied by a corresponding graphic.

When you think the vehicle has enough space in front and behind it, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid, bring the vehicle to a complete stop.



When automatic steering is finished, the touch screen displays a message indicating that the active park assist process is done. The driver is responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before putting the transmission in P (Park).

Deactivating the Park Assist Feature

The system can be deactivated manually by:

- pressing the active park assist button
- grabbing the steering wheel
- driving above approximately 20 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search
- driving above 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering
- turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.
- Any door (except the driver's) opens.
- Something touches the steering wheel.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message is displayed, followed by a chime. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system may be off
Any door (except the driver's) may not be completely closed

The system does not offer a particular space
Something may be contacting the front bumper or side sensors
There is not enough room on both sides of the vehicle in order to park
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space
The vehicle is farther than 6.5 ft (2 m) from the parking space
The vehicle is closer than 16 in. (40 cm) from neighboring parked vehicles
The transmission is in R (Reverse); the vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space
The vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (i.e. rolling forward when R [Reverse] is selected)
The transmission is in R (Reverse); the vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space
An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning the vehicle properly
Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly
The vehicle was pulled too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space
The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (i.e. not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes)
A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space
A parked vehicle has a high attachment (i.e. salt sprayer, snowplow, moving truck bed, etc.)
The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed
The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (i.e. driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash)

REAR VIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

Use caution when using the rear video camera and the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines (if enabled) have been removed when the liftgate is ajar.

Use caution when turning camera features on or off while in R (Reverse). Make sure the vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind the vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind the vehicle.

E162528

The camera is located on the liftgate.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in R (Reverse).

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (i.e. a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features are displayed.*

Note: *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what is being towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.*

Note: *The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:*

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- The camera's view is obstructed by mud, water or debris. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of the vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the touch screen when the transmission is not in R (Reverse):

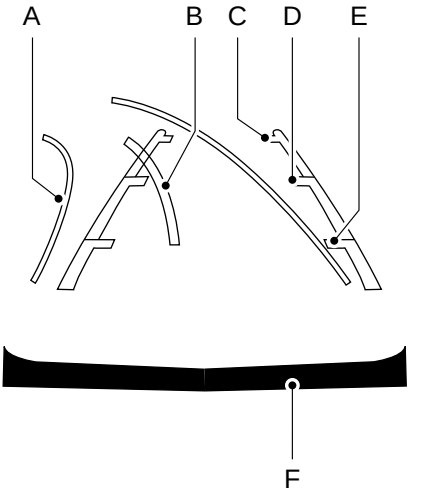
- Menu > Vehicle > Rear View Camera

After changing a system setting, the touch screen shows a preview of the selected features.

Guidelines and the Centerline

Note: *Active guidelines and fixed guidelines are only available when the transmission is in R (Reverse).*

Note: *The centerline is only available if Active or Fixed guidelines are on.*



E142436

A	Active guidelines
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position is changed while reversing, the vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines are not shown when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Selectable settings for this feature are ACTIVE + FIXED, FIXED and OFF.

Visual Park Aid Alert

Note: *Visual park alert is only available when the transmission is in R (Reverse).*

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 8 mph (12 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights which appear on top of the video image when an object is detected by the reverse sensing system. The alert highlights the closest object detected. The reverse sensing alert can be disabled and if visual park aid alert is enabled, highlighted areas are still displayed.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind the vehicle is not shown. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in R (Reverse).*

Note: *When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.*

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind the vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in R (Reverse). When the transmission is shifted out of R (Reverse), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

Selectable settings for this feature are + and -. The default setting for the manual zoom is OFF.

Rear Camera Delay

When shifting the transmission out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the camera image remains in the display until the vehicle speed reaches 6 mph (10 km/h). This occurs when the rear camera delay feature is on, or until a radio button is selected.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on winding roads or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear to assist the system in maintaining the set speed. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Note: *Cruise control will disengage if your vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.*

E142437

The cruise controls are located on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release **ON**.

The indicator will display in the instrument cluster.

Setting a Speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed will change in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.

Canceling the Set Speed

Pull **CAN** toward you and release, or tap the brake pedal. The set speed will not be erased.

Resuming the Set Speed

Pull **RES** toward you and release.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Note: *You will erase the set speed if you switch the system off.*

Press and release **OFF** or switch the ignition off.

ECO Cruise Control

This feature saves vehicle energy by relaxing acceleration compared to standard cruise control. For example, your vehicle may temporarily lose speed when going uphill. **ECO** will appear in the information display when ECO cruise control is activated. It can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 88).

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. When a system error is detected a steering message will appear in the information display.

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation of the electronic system. When an electronic error is detected, a message will be displayed in the information display. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, and turn off the engine. After at least 10 seconds, reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the information display for a steering message. If a steering message returns, or returns while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked.

Obtain immediate service if a system error is detected. You may not notice any difference in the feel of your steering, but a serious condition may exist. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

Adaptive Learning

The EPS system adaptive learning helps correct for road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the vehicle's brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the vehicle must be driven a short distance before the strategy is relearned and all systems are reactivated.

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

E162198

The under floor storage compartments are located behind the front seats. Lift the handle to unlatch the lid.

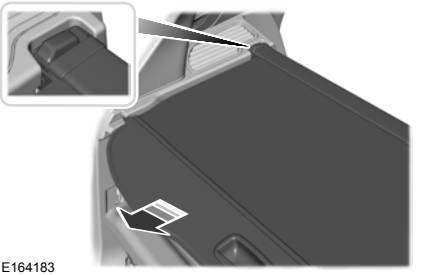
LUGGAGE COVERS

WARNINGS

Make sure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.

Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in a sudden stop or crash.

Use the cargo shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.



E164183

Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the cargo shade.

To operate the cargo shade:

1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward.
2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.

Removing the Shade

E162195

Press the release lever on each side forward, and then lift the shade out of the mounting feature. You will see a red mark when the lever is unlatched.

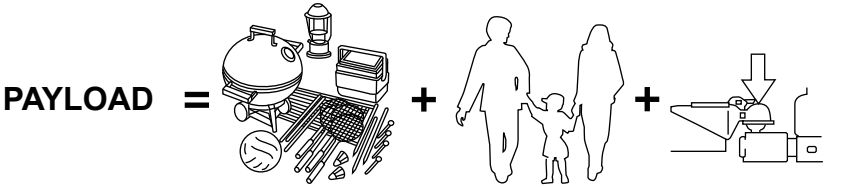
LOAD LIMIT

Vehicle Loading

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight - is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight - is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



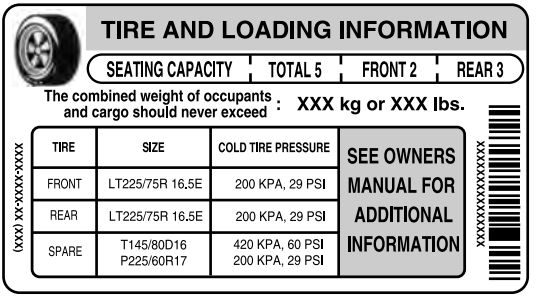
E143816

Payload - is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment on the vehicle, you must subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

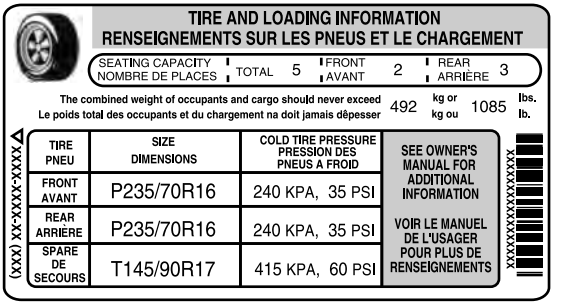
WARNING

The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

Example only:



E142516



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

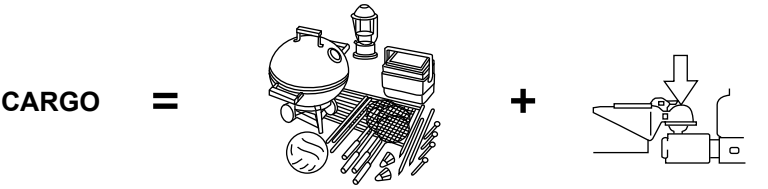
SEATING CAPACITY / NOMBRE DE PLACES: TOTAL 5 | FRONT / AVANT 2 | REAR / ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed / Le poids total des occupants et du chargement na doit jamais dépesser 492 kg or / kg ou 1085 lbs. / lb.

(XXX) XX-XXXX-XXXX

TIRE / PNEU	SIZE / DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE / PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION / VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT / AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
REAR / ARRIÈRE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE / DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

E142517

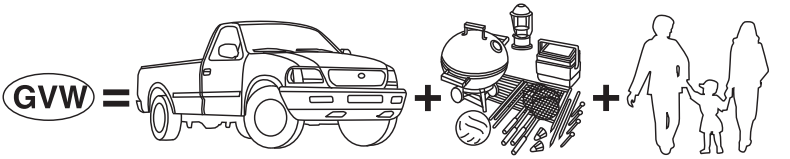


E143817

Cargo Weight - includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) - is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. **The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.**

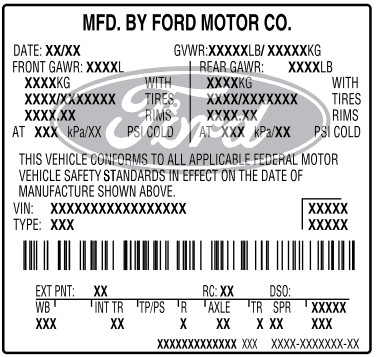


E162603

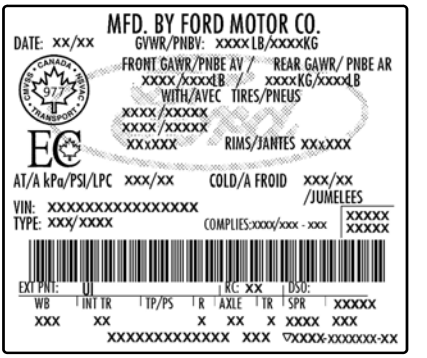
GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) - is the Vehicle Curb Weight, plus cargo, plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). It is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. **The Gross Vehicle Weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

Example only:



E142523



E142524

WARNINGS

Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

WARNINGS

Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have

the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

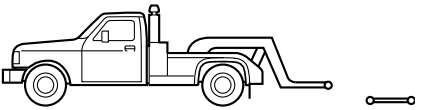
The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.

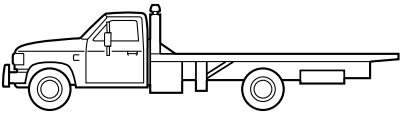
TOWING A TRAILER

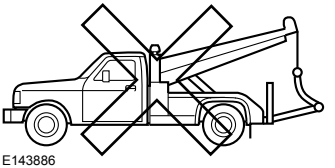
WARNING

Never tow a trailer with your vehicle. This powertrain is not designed to tow.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

The front wheels (drive wheels) must be on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

We recommend placing the rear wheels on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the front using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the rear fascia.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Emergency Towing

In the event your vehicle becomes disabled (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain/transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gearshift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 153).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 kilometers).

Recreational Towing

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See* ***Climate Control*** *(page 105).*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. We designed these guidelines to prevent damage to your transmission.

You can tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground or with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground:

- Tow only in the forward direction.
- Release the parking brake.
- Place the transmission in position **N**.
- Place the ignition in the off position. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 124).
- Do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Place the transmission in position **P**, start the vehicle and allow it to run for one minute at the beginning of each day (you may need to press the accelerator pedal in order to start the vehicle). After allowing the vehicle to run, place the transmission back into position **N** and the ignition in the accessory position.

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. The engine also needs to break in. Avoid hard accelerations and driving too fast for the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). If possible, avoid carrying heavy loads up steep grades during the break-in period.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Several things affect your fuel economy:

- How you drive your vehicle
- How you maintain your vehicle
- The conditions you drive your vehicle in

You may improve your fuel economy by keeping these things in mind:

- Avoid constant accelerating in order to change lanes and get around other vehicles.
- Drive your vehicle at reasonable speeds. Traveling at 65 miles per hour (105 kilometers per hour) uses about 15 percent less fuel than traveling at 75 miles per hour (121 kilometers per hour).
- Drive at steady speeds without stopping.
- Anticipate stops. Slowing down your vehicle may eliminate the need to stop.
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Turn off the heater if you do not need it. When you have the heater on, keep it at the lowest blower and temperature setting necessary to be comfortable.
- When it is cold outside, park in a sunny location or climate-controlled environment. This may save fuel by reducing the energy needed to heat the cabin.
- Turn off the air conditioning if you do not need it. When you have the air conditioning on, keep it at the lowest blower and highest temperature setting necessary to be comfortable.
- When it is hot or sunny outside, parking in a shaded or climate-controlled environment will save fuel by reducing the energy needed to cool the cabin.
- For the C-Max Energi, use preconditioning to improve your fuel economy. For more information on preconditioning, See **High Voltage Battery** (page 146).
- Turn off the heated seats if you are not using them.
- Turn off the defroster when you no longer need it for visibility, turning it off will help you improve your fuel economy.
- For the C-Max Energi, plug in and recharge the high voltage battery whenever possible.
- Use ECO Cruise Control, especially in hilly terrain. For information on enabling eco-cruise, See **Cruise Control** (page 171).
- Use low gear **L** shift position when enhanced engine braking is needed. Otherwise, use drive gear **D** shift position.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving. A warmed up engine works more efficiently. When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.

- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.
- Use the coach and brake coach display to get feedback on your economical drive style. For more information, See **Information Displays** (page 88).

Avoid these actions; they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden accelerations or hard accelerations. Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off your vehicle.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight. Approximately 1 mile per gallon (0.4 kilometers per liter) is lost for every 400 pounds (180 kilograms) of weight carried.
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (bug deflectors, car top carriers, ski or bike racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

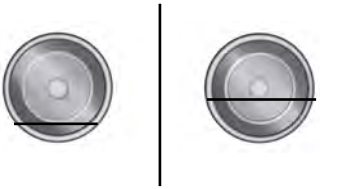
Things to keep in mind when you refuel your vehicle:

- Fuel generates fewer vapors when it is cool and dark outside. Fill your vehicle up in the early morning or late evening.
- Use the recommended octane-rated fuel. Using fuel below the recommended rating will lower your fuel economy.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

Note: *Driving through deep water above the recommended levels can cause vehicle damage.*

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



E142667

When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall.

Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle, leaving the pedal area unobstructed, and which can be firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Incorrectly fitted floor mats can cause the accelerator pedal to become stuck in the open position. This can cause loss of vehicle control.

Always correctly install the floor mats to the retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position or obstruct pedal operation.

Do not place unsecured floor mats or any other covering in the foot well.

Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This will reduce the pedal clearance and interfere with the pedal operation.

Do not allow objects to fall or become trapped under the pedals of your vehicle. This can cause loss of vehicle control.

Carry out regular inspections to make sure the floor mats are secure.

To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

Remove in reverse order.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold In The U.S.: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24 hours, seven days a week.
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare, if provided with the vehicle (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- battery jump start.
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- fuel delivery — Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5 liters) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9 liters) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out — available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing — Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56.3 kilometers) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56.3 kilometers) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56.3 kilometers).

Trailers shall be covered up to $200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold In The U.S. : Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is found in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56.3 kilometers). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles Sold In Canada : Getting Roadside Assistance

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

Vehicles Sold In Canada : Using Roadside Assistance

For your convenience, you may complete the roadside assistance identification card found in the centerfold of your warranty guide and retain for future reference.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. If you require more information, please refer to the coverage section of your warranty guide, call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.
- Press the button again to turn them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING

Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Turn the ignition to crank.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Turn the ignition on again to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to turn the ignition off.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button (crank attempt).
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button (ignition off).
4. Press the **START/STOP** button again to re-enable the fuel system.

JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

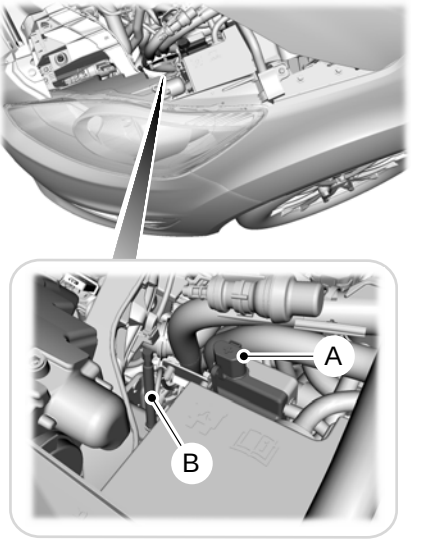
Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.*

1. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

2. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
3. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

Your vehicle has a 12-volt battery that has two prongs accessible from under the hood. Your vehicle can be jumped the same way conventional vehicles can by using these prongs. The illustration below shows the two connector prongs used for jump-starting your vehicle.



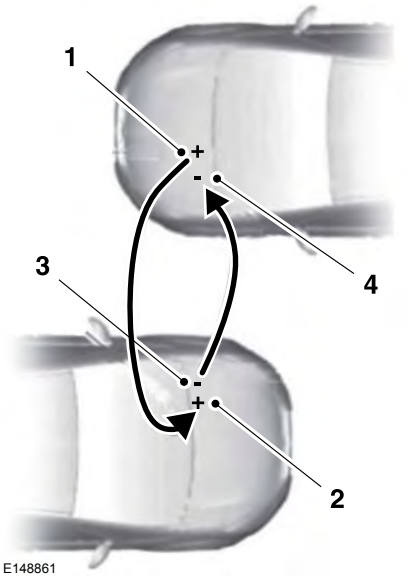
E163911

A. Positive prong (+)

B. Negative prong (-)

Note: *In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.*

Note: *Remove the red cap from the positive prong (A) on your vehicle before connecting the cables.*



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) prong (A) of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) prong (B) of your vehicle.

Note: *Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components. These items should not be considered grounding points.*

WARNING

Never connect the negative end of the cable to the negative (-) terminal of the discharged battery. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery. Always use the negative prong as a grounding point.

Make sure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, the moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

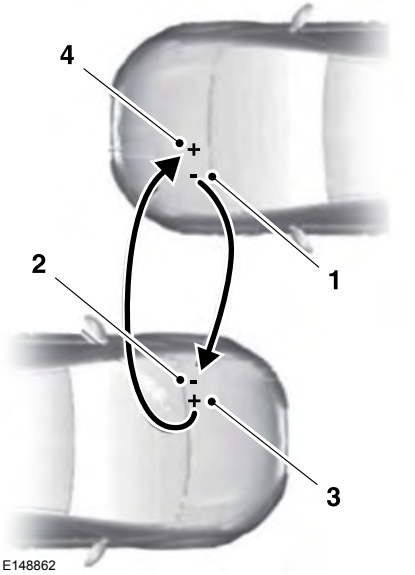
Jump Starting

1. Start the booster vehicle and press the accelerator pedal moderately.
2. Start the disabled vehicle. Check the instrument cluster for the Ready to Drive light as the gasoline engine may not start, but the electric motor may be running.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicles for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: *In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.*



1. Remove the jumper cable from the negative prong.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) prong of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After disconnecting the jumper cables, let the disabled vehicle sit in Ready to Drive mode for several minutes to charge the 12V battery. The disabled vehicle can charge the 12V battery even if the gasoline engine may be off. The 12V battery will receive power from the high-voltage battery instead.

COLLISION, DAMAGE OR FIRE EVENT

Guidance for Ford Motor Company Electric and Hybrid-Electric Vehicles Equipped With High Voltage Batteries

(Vehicle Owner/Operator/General Public)
Electric and Hybrid-Electric Vehicle Considerations

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle (EV) or hybrid-electric vehicle (HEV):

- Always assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting/off-gassing high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery may result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle Information and General Safety Practices

- Know the make and model of your vehicle.
- Review the owner’s manual and become familiar with your vehicle’s safety information and recommended safety practices.
- Do not attempt to repair damaged electric and hybrid-electric vehicles yourself. Contact an authorized Ford Dealer or vehicle manufacturer representative for service.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If possible

- Move your car to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
- Roll down the windows before shutting your vehicle off.
- Place your vehicle in Park, set the parking brake, turn off the vehicle, activate the hazard lights, and move your key(s) at least 16 feet (5 meters) away from the vehicle.

Always

- Call 911 if assistance is needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Do not touch exposed electrical components or the engine compartment, as a shock hazard may exist.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call 911 immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle.

- Exit the vehicle immediately.
- Advise 911 that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.
- Remain a safe distance upwind and uphill from the vehicle fire.
- Stay out of the roadway and stay out of the way of any oncoming traffic while awaiting the arrival of emergency responders.

Post-Incident

- Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 50 feet (15 meters) of any structure or vehicle.
- Make sure that passenger and cargo compartments remain ventilated (i.e., open window, door, or trunk).
- For vehicles in the United States, notify Ford Motor Company 1-800-392-3673 (then follow the prompts on the voice response menu), an authorized Ford dealer or service center as soon as possible as there may be other steps to secure and discharge the high-voltage battery.
- For vehicles in Canada, notify Ford Motor Company 1-800-565-3673 (then follow the prompts on the voice response menu), an authorized Ford dealer or service center as soon as possible as there may be other steps to secure and discharge the high-voltage battery.
- Call 911 if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The horn and lamps will turn off when:

- The hazard control button is pressed
- The panic button (if equipped) is pressed on the remote entry transmitter
- Your vehicle runs out of power

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952)

Online

Additional information and resources are available online at www.fordowner.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Manuals
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Online

www.ford.ca

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 21470
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Telephone: +971 4 3326084
Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409
Local Telephone Number of Kuwait: 24810575
FAX: +971 4 3327299
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing expcac@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website	http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm
Phone	1–800–333–0510

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Pre-Fuse Box

Your vehicle has a pre-fuse box attached to the power distribution box. There is a second pre-fuse box attached to the 12-volt battery terminal in the rear of your vehicle. They contain high-current fuses. If you need to replace one of these fuses, see an authorized dealer.

Power Distribution Box

WARNINGS

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

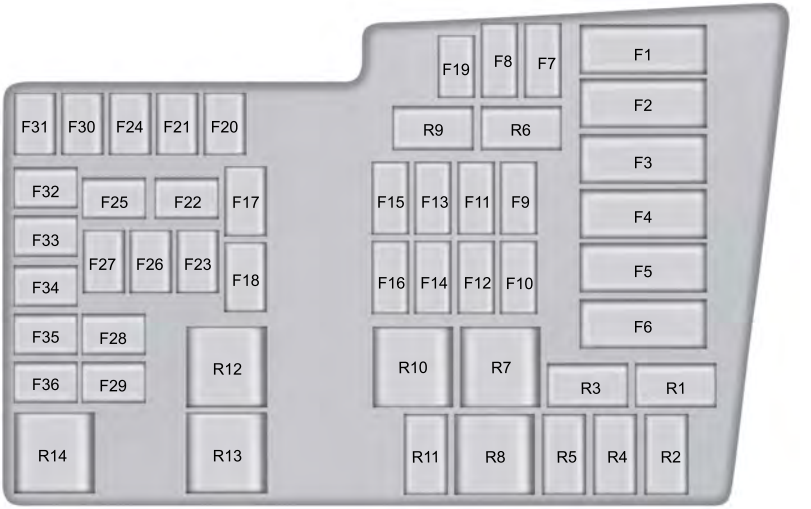
WARNINGS

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 218).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.



E162196

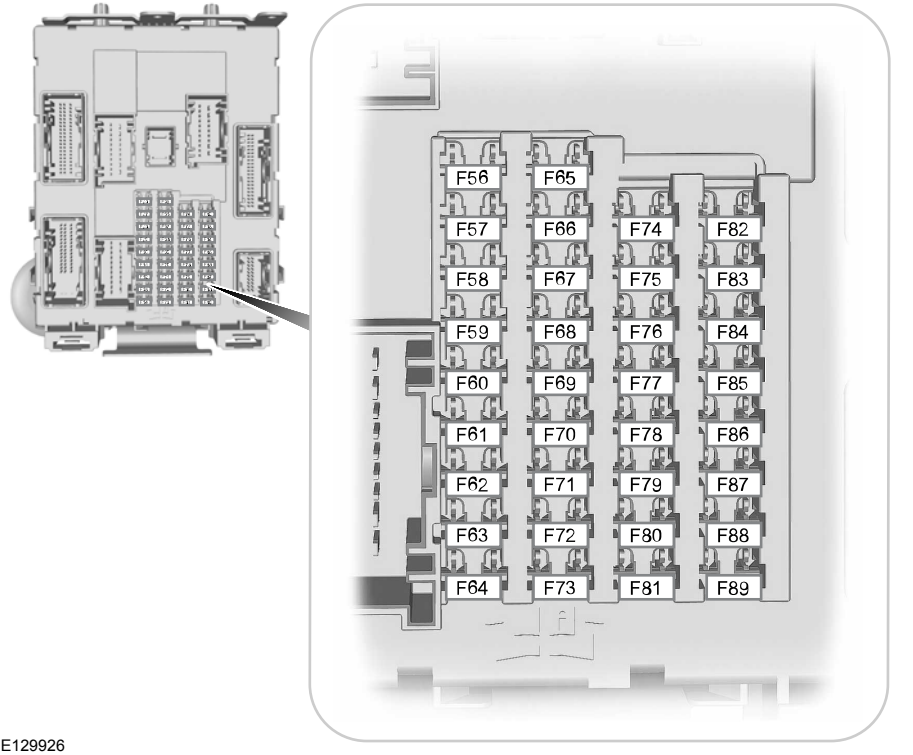
Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F1	50A Midi	Cooling fan module
F2	50A Midi	Electric water pump
F3	50A Midi	Body control module supply 1
F4	50A Midi	Body control module supply 2
F5	—	Not used
F6	—	Not used
F7	40A**	Anti-lock brake system pump
F8	30A**	Anti-lock brake system valve
F9	40A**	Vacuum pump
F10	40A**	Heater blower motor
F11	30A**	Engine management
F12	—	Not used
F13	25A**	Powertrain control module relay
F14	20A**	Rear wiper
F15	30A**	Body control module KL30 supply
F16	20A**	Body control module 15 feed
F17	20A**	Transmission oil pump (C-MAX Energi)
F18	20A**	Front wiper motor
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake system and electronic stability program module
F20	15A*	Horn
F21	5A*	Stop light switch
F22	5A*	Vacuum pump monitoring
F23	5A*	Engine control module 15 / Powertrain control module 15 / Transmission oil pump 15
F24	5A*	Relay coils, Light switch module
F25	10A*	Motor electronic cooling pump

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F26	5A*	Electronic power assist steering module 15
F27	5A*	Mass air flow sensor
F28	15A*	Powertrain control module
F29	10A*	Electronic air conditioning compressor / Positive temperature coefficient heater
F30	10A*	Engine control module, Powertrain control module
F31	5A*	Charge port light ring (C-MAX Energi)
F32	20A*	Vehicle power 2
F33	15A*	Vehicle power 4
F34	10A*	Injectors
F35	10A*	Vehicle power 3
F36	20A*	Vehicle power 1
R1	—	Not used
R2	Micro relay	Horn
R3	Micro relay	Hybrid powertrain control
R4	Micro relay	Front wiper
R5	—	Not used
R6	Micro relay	Front and rear wiper high/low
R7	Power relay	Vacuum pump
R8	Power relay	Ignition feed
R9	—	Not used
R10	Mini relay	Vacuum pump sensor
R11	—	Not used
R12	Power relay	Cooling fan
R13	Mini relay	Heater blower
R14	Mini relay	Engine control relay

*Mini fuses **Cartridge fuses

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is located on the right-hand side below the glove box. You may need to remove a trim panel to access it.



E129926

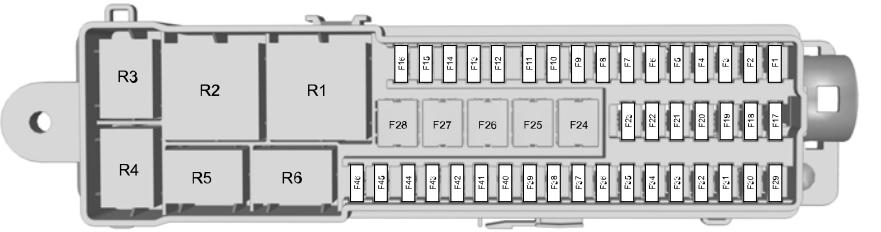
Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F56	20A	Fuel pump supply
F57	—	Not used
F58	5A	Not used (spare)
F59	5A	Passive anti-theft system

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F60	10A	Interior light, Driver door switch pack, Glove box illumination, Overhead console switch bank
F61	20A	Cigar lighter, Second row power point
F62	5A	Autowipers module, Auto-dimming rear view mirror
F63	10A	Not used (spare)
F64	—	Not used
F65	10A	Liftgate release
F66	20A	Driver door unlock supply
F67	7.5A	Cell phone passport (C-MAX Energi), Multi-function display, GPS module, SYNC
F68	15A	Not used (spare)
F69	5A	Instrument cluster
F70	20A	Central lock and unlock supply
F71	10A	Heating control head (manual air conditioner), Climate control module
F72	7.5A	Steering wheel module
F73	7.5A	Data link connector, OBD II supply
F74	15A	Headlamp supply
F75	15A	Fog lamp supply
F76	10A	Reversing lamp supply
F77	20A	Washer pump
F78	5A	Ignition switch, Start button
F79	15A	Radio, Hazard light switch
F80	20A	Not used (spare)
F81	5A	Power sun shade, Remote receiver antenna
F82	20A	Washer pump ground
F83	20A	Central locking ground

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F84	20A	Drive door unlock ground
F85	7.5A	Electronic 15 feed
F86	10A	Restraints control module, Passenger air bag deactivation indicator
F87	—	Not used
F88	25A	Not used (spare)
F89	—	Not used

Luggage Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is located in the luggage compartment behind the left side wheel well. Remove the fuse panel cover to gain access to the fuses.



E129927

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F1	5A	Hands-free liftgate entry module
F2	10A	Keyless vehicle module
F3	5A	Keyless vehicle door handles
F4	25A	Door control unit front left
F5	25A	Door control unit front right
F6	25A	Door control unit rear left

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F7	25A	Door control unit rear right
F8	—	Not used
F9	25A	Driver seat motor
F10	25A	Heated rear window
F11	—	Not used
F12	15A	Battery electronics control module
F13	—	Not used
F14	10A	Charger (C-MAX Energi)
F15	—	Not used
F16	—	Not used
F17	10A	Battery electronics control module
F18	15A	Battery electronics control module — fan
F19	15A	Charger fan (C-MAX Energi)
F20	—	Not used
F21	15A	Smart datalink connector
F22	10A	Active noise cancellation
F23	—	Not used
F24	30A	DC/AC power converter
F25	25A	Power liftgate
F26	40A	AC/DC charger (C-MAX Energi)
F27	20A	Luggage compartment outlet
F28	—	Not used
F29	—	Not used
F30	5A	Parking aid module
F31	5A	Rear view camera
F32	5A	DC/AC power converter
F33	—	Not used

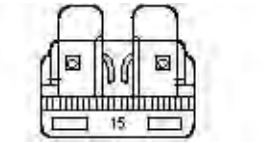
Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F34	20A	Driver seat heater
F35	20A	Passenger seat heater
F36	—	Not used
F37	20A	Power sun shade
F38	—	Not used
F39	—	Not used
F40	—	Not used
F41	—	Not used
F42	—	Not used
F43	—	Not used
F44	—	Not used
F45	5A	Humidity sensor
F46	10A	Fuel system
R1	Power relay	Rear 15 relay
R2	Mini relay	Heated rear window
R3	Micro relay	Fuel door (C-MAX Energi)
R4	—	Not used
R5	—	Not used
R6	Micro relay	Rear wiper

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E142430

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color

Color					
Fuse rating	**Mini fuses**	**Standard fuses**	**Maxi fuses**	**Cartridge maxi fuses**	**Fuse link cartridge**
2A	Grey	Grey	-	-	-
3A	Violet	Violet	-	-	-
4A	Pink	Pink	-	-	-
5A	Tan	Tan	-	-	-
7.5A	Brown	Brown	-	-	-
10A	Red	Red	-	-	-
15A	Blue	Blue	-	-	-
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	-	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	-	-	Orange	Green	Green
50A	-	-	Red	Red	Red
60A	-	-	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	-	-	Tan	-	Brown
80A	-	-	Natural	Black	Black

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

To help you service your vehicle, we provide scheduled maintenance information which makes tracking routine service easy. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 417).

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to **P** (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key (if equipped).
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to **P** (Park).
2. Block the wheels

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

E142457

1. To open the hood, go inside the vehicle and pull the hood release handle located under the left hand side of the instrument panel.

2. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the secondary release lever, which is located under the front of the hood, to your right of the center of the vehicle (driver's side), near the headlight.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the yellow secondary release lever to your left, toward the center of the vehicle.

E87786

4. Raise the hood and support it with the prop rod.
5. To close the hood, lower and secure the prop rod in the clip.
6. Lower the hood and allow it to drop the last 10-12 inches (25 to 30 centimeters).

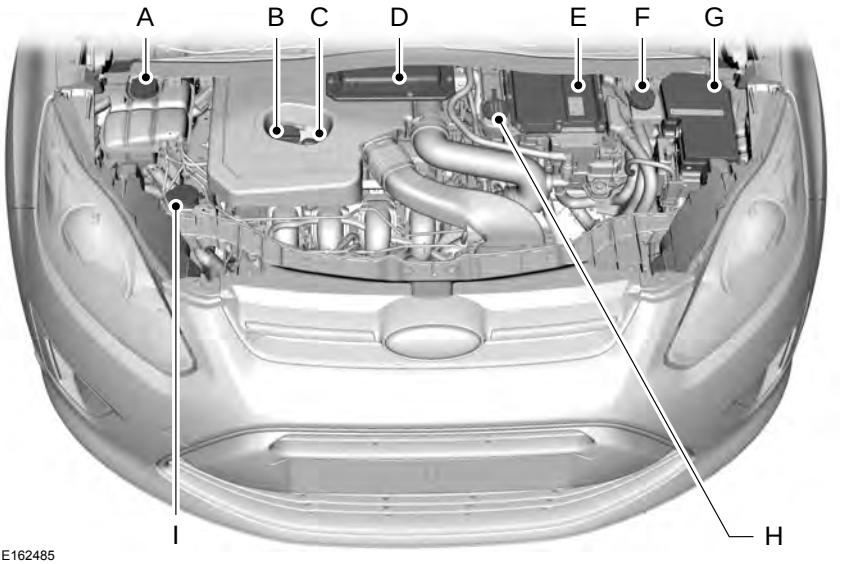
Note: *Make sure that the hood is closed properly and fully latched on both sides of the hood.*

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L HYBRID

WARNING

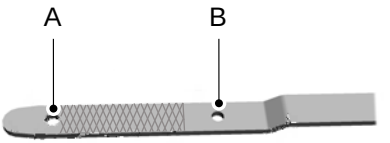
The inverter system controller contains various high-voltage components that can cause serious bodily harm or death. The inverter system controller is not serviceable and should never be touched, probed, or tampered with.

Note: *Do not attempt to service any of the high-voltage components or wiring. For easier identification, the high-voltage wiring insulation is color coated orange.*



A Engine coolant reservoir cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 213).
B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).
C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 212).
D Engine air filter cover. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 229).
E Inverter system controller.
F Brake fluid reservoir cap. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 217).
G Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 200).
H Inverter system controller coolant reservoir cap.
I Windshield washer fluid reservoir cap. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 217).

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E169062

A	MIN
B	MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

Note: *Check the level before starting the engine.*

Note: *Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.*

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add oil immediately.

Adding Engine Oil

Note: *Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.*

Note: *Do not add oil further than the MAX mark. Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage.*

E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets the Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 265).
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System

Note: *Reset the oil life monitoring only after an oil change.*

1. Turn the ignition key to the on position. Do not start the engine. For vehicles with push-button start, press and hold the start button for two seconds without pressing the brake pedal. Do not attempt to start the engine.
2. Press both the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time.
3. Keep both pedals fully pressed.

4. After three seconds, the Service: Oil reset in prog. message will be displayed.
5. After 25 seconds, the Service: Oil reset complete message will be displayed.
6. Release both the accelerator and brake pedals.
7. The Service: Oil reset complete message will no longer be displayed.
8. Rotate the key to the off position. For vehicles with push-button start, press the start button to turn the vehicle off completely.

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

Engine Coolant and Inverter System Controller Coolant

Your vehicle is equipped with two separate cooling systems. One is for cooling the engine and one is for cooling the inverter system controller that is specific to the hybrid operating system. The two systems operate similarly, with the inverter system controller cooling system generally operating at a lower temperature and pressure.

Checking the Engine Coolant

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the engine coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 417).

Note: *Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the engine coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.*

Note: *If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add prediluted coolant immediately. See **Adding Engine Coolant** in this chapter.*

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºF (-34ºC) and -34ºF (-37ºC).

Note: *For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240 available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.*

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.*

Checking the Inverter System Controller Coolant

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the inverter system controller coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 417).

Note: *Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the inverter system controller coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.*

Note: *If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add prediluted coolant immediately. See **Adding Inverter System Controller Coolant** in this chapter.*

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºF (-34ºC) and -34ºF (-37ºC).

Note: *For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240 available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.*

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.*

Adding Coolant

WARNINGS

Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or additives as they can cause damage to the cooling or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.*

Note: *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

Note: *It is very important to use prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification in order to avoid plugging the small coolant passageways. Use of concentrated coolant and water may cause coolant passageway plugging and void the warranty. See* ***Capacities and Specifications*** *(page 265).*

- Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of coolants may harm your cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm the engine, inverter system controller, and cooling system components and may void the warranty.
- In case of emergency, a large amount of water without engine coolant may be added to the engine cooling system only in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the engine cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with prediluted engine coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating, or freezing. DO NOT use this method for the inverter system controller cooling system. The inverter system controller cooling system operates close to ambient temperature, and is susceptible to freezing in any subfreezing environment in the absence of coolant.

- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant). Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Adding Engine Coolant

1. Unscrew the engine coolant reservoir cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.
2. Use a funnel to add prediluted engine coolant to the engine coolant reservoir. Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the engine coolant reservoir. Use prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 265).
3. Close the engine coolant reservoir cap.

Whenever you add coolant, check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the engine coolant level to the proper level.

Adding Inverter System Controller Coolant

1. Open the inverter system controller coolant reservoir cap.
2. Use a funnel to add prediluted coolant to the inverter system controller coolant reservoir. Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the inverter system controller coolant reservoir. Use prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 265).
3. Close the inverter system controller coolant reservoir cap.

Whenever you add coolant, check the coolant level in the inverter system controller coolant reservoir the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the inverter system controller coolant level to the proper level.

Recycled Engine Coolant

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have an authorized Ford dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have an authorized Ford dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% will provide improved overheat protection. Engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area and:

The coolant temperature warning light will illuminate.

The service engine soon indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS

Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate the vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring the vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, the vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Note: *Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.
5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

Note: *Transmission fluid should be checked by an authorized dealer. If required, fluid should be added by an authorized dealer.*

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 417). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked:

- if the transmission is not working properly.
- if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

WARNING

If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40ºF (5ºC), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Note: *The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 265).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

Note: *If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

Note: *See an authorized dealer for low voltage battery access, testing, or replacement.*

When a low voltage battery replacement is necessary, see an authorized dealer to replace the low voltage battery with a Ford recommended replacement low voltage battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), do not allow a technician to connect any electrical device ground connection directly to the low voltage battery negative post. A connection at the low voltage battery negative post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If a person adds electrical or electronic accessories or components to the vehicle, the accessories or components may adversely affect the low voltage battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically-controlled by a computer, some engine control settings are maintained by power from the low voltage battery. Some engine computer settings, like the idle trim and fuel trim strategy, optimize the driveability and performance of the engine. Some other computer settings, like the clock and radio station

presets, are also maintained in memory by power from the low voltage battery. When a technician disconnects and connects the low voltage battery, these settings are erased. Complete the following procedure in order to restore the settings:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission into P.
3. Turn off all accessories.
4. Step on the brake pedal and start the vehicle.
5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. While the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio System** (page 272). Reset the power windows bounce-back feature. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 76). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio System** (page 272).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute. If the engine turns off, step on the accelerator to start the engine.
7. While the engine is running, step on the brake pedal and shift the transmission to N.
8. Allow the engine to run for at least one minute by pressing on the accelerator pedal.
9. Drive the vehicle at least 10 miles (16 kilometers) to completely relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.

Note: *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Note: *Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.*

Note: *It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time.*

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Note: *Use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the front wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. The front wipers will not return to their normal position as soon as you switch on the ignition. The front wipers will stay in the service position when you switch the ignition on or start the engine. Switch on the front wipers to any mode, then switch off the front wipers to bring the front wipers back to the park position.*

Note: *The windshield wiper blades are different in length. If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the wipers may not work correctly. If equipped with autowipers, the rain sensor may not work correctly.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.*

Note: *Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.*

Note: *Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield*

Setting the Front Wipers in the Service Position

1. Make sure that the outside of the windshield is free from snow and ice.
2. Switch on the ignition.

E162733

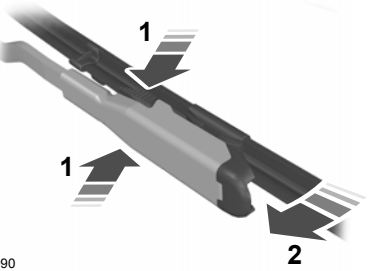
3. Switch off the ignition and within three seconds, pull the wiper lever to toward you. Hold the lever in until wipers have moved to the service position.

E162532

4. Release the lever when the wipers have moved to the service position.

Changing the Front Wiper Blades

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



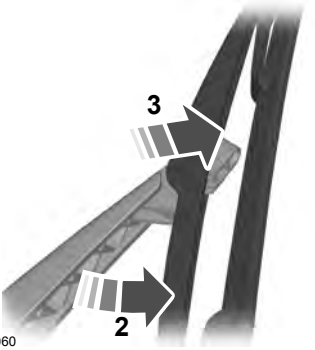
E129990

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E130060

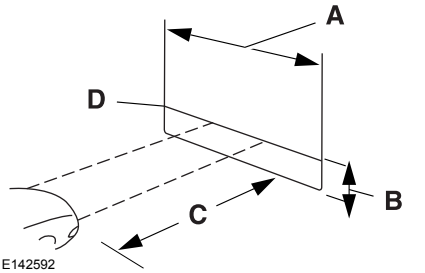
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.



E142592

A	8 feet (2.4 meters)
B	Center height of lamp to ground
C	25 feet (7.6 meters)
D	Horizontal reference line

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

Note: *To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.*

2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

E142465

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.

E142467

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP

E142468

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the hood.
2. Remove the two screws from the headlamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the headlamp assembly as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Carefully lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

CHANGING A BULB

Lamp Assembly Condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

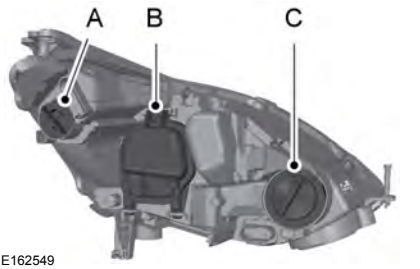
Replacing Headlamp Bulbs

WARNING

Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: *If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.*

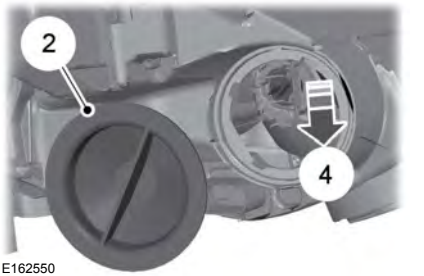
Locating the headlamp bulbs:



E162549

A	Turn lamp
B	Low beam headlamp
C	High beam headlamp

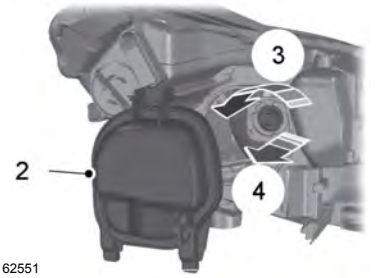
Replacing the High Beam Headlamp Bulb:



E162550

1. Remove the headlamp assembly.
2. Remove service cap.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.

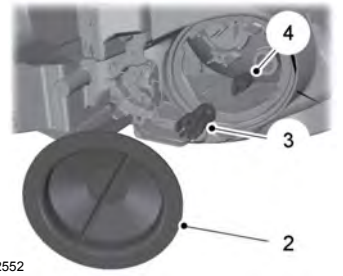
Replacing the Low Beam Headlamp Bulb:



1. Remove the headlamp assembly.
2. Remove service cap.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.

Install the new bulbs in reverse order.

Replacing Side Marker Bulbs:



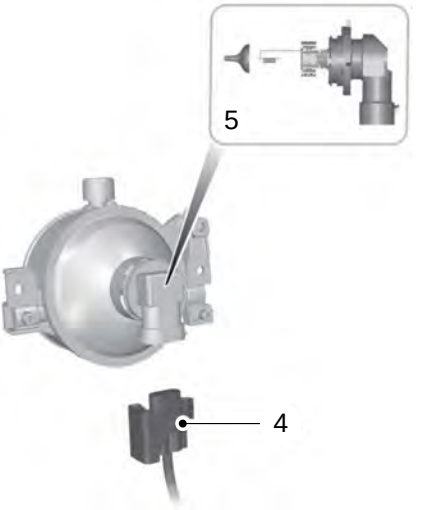
1. Remove the headlamp assembly.
2. Remove service cap.
3. Remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing Fog, Park and Turn Signal Bulbs

Note: *You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.*

1. Remove the fog lamp cover
2. Remove the 2 screws.
3. Remove the lamp.



4. Disconnect the electrical connector

5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
6. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

E162553

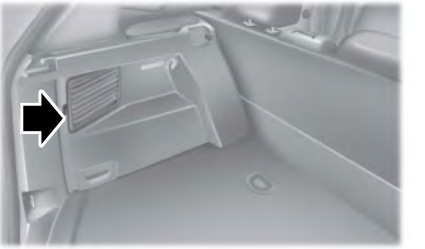
1. Remove the screws from the splash shield at the wheel well to gain access to the lamp assembly.

E142799

2. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above.

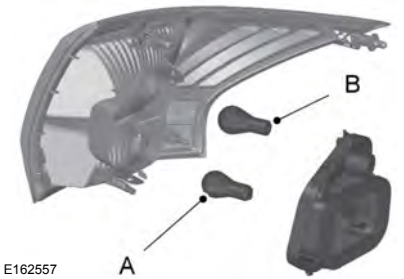
Replacing Tail, Brake and Turn Signal Bulbs


E162555

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position.
2. Open the liftgate.
3. Remove the trim panel cover.

E162556

4. Disconnect the electrical connector
5. Remove the wing nut.
6. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.



E162557

7. Remove the bulb holder.
8. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, then turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove the bulb. A. Taillamp and brake lamp. B. Turn lamp.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

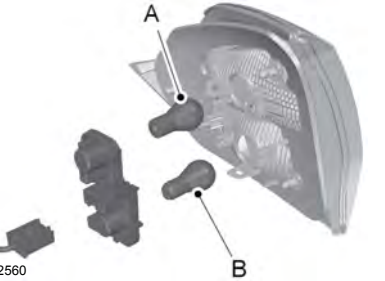
Replacing Reverse Lamp and Tail Lamp Bulbs:

E162558

1. Make sure the lighting control is in the off position.
2. Open the liftgate
3. Remove the trim panel cover.

E162559

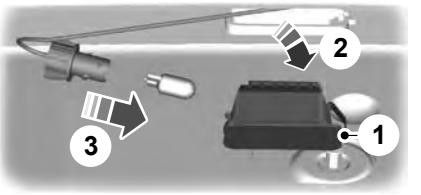
4. Remove the wing nut.
5. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.



E162560

6. Disconnect the electrical connector
7. Remove the bulb holder.
8. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn the bulb counterclockwise, and remove the bulb. A. Reverse lamp. B. Tail lamp.
9. Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb



E72789

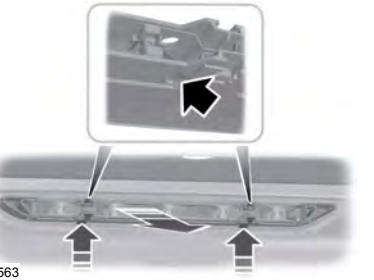
1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb.

Replacing the Center High Mounted Brake Lamp Bulbs

E162562

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Detach the clips above the inboard side of the rear window.



E162563

3. Insert a suitable tool into the holes.
4. Carefully pull the lamp towards the front of the vehicle in order to release the spring clips.

E162564

5. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
6. Remove the bulb holder.
7. Remove the bulb.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized “D.O.T.” for North America to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam (Halogen)	9005LL
Headlamp low beam (Halogen)	H11LL
Sidemarker - front	168
Park lamp - front	194
Turn lamp - front	W21W
Fog lamps	H10 (9145)
Tail/brake lamp	3157K
Turn lamp - rear	T20
Backup lamp	921
License plate lamp	W5W
* High-mount brake lamp	W5W
* Interior lamps	LED

* To replace these lamps - see your authorized dealer.

To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

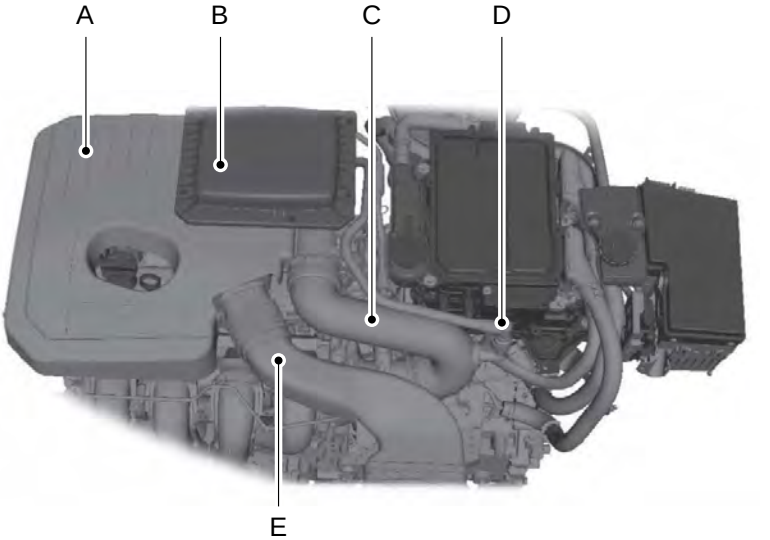
Note: *Failure to re-install the air cleaner assembly properly by fully seating on the mounting studs in (5) places and securing with the (2) bolts may result in air cleaner assembly dislodgement from engine and damage to the air cleaner assembly and other engine components. Therefore we recommend that the air filter be serviced at a Ford dealer.*

Note: *When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See* ***Capacities and Specifications*** *(page 265).*

Note: *Change the air filter element at the proper interval.*

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.*

Identifying Air Filter Element Components



E162533

A. Air cleaner assembly
B. Air cleaner cover
C. Air cleaner outlet tube
D. Positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) tube
E. Air cleaner intake tube

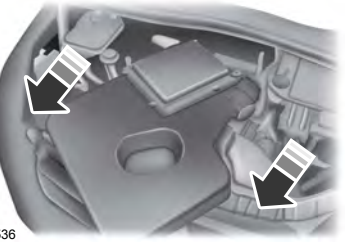
Removing the Engine Air Filter Element

E162534

1. Loosen the hose clamps for air cleaner outlet tube ©). Disconnect the tube from the air cleaner assembly (A).
2. Release the tabs and disconnect the PCV tube (D) from the air cleaner outlet tube ©) and remove the tube.
3. Disconnect the air cleaner intake tube (E) from the air cleaner assembly (A).

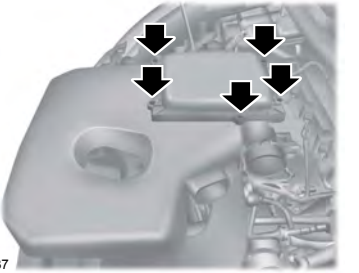
E162535

4. Remove the bolts from each side of the air cleaner assembly (A) as shown with arrows



E162536

5. Lift the air cleaner assembly (A) from the mounting studs, then rotate and pull it towards the front of the vehicle.

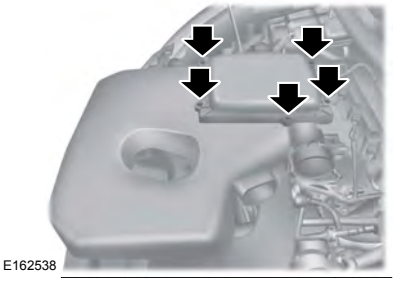


E162537

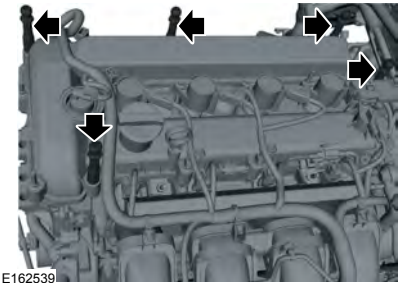
6. Loosen the 5 bolts from the air cleaner cover (B).
7. Remove the air cleaner cover (B) from the air cleaner assembly (A).

Installing the Engine Air Filter Element

Note: *Clean the inside of the air filter assembly before installing a new air filter*


E162538

1. Install the new engine air filter into the engine air cleaner assembly.
2. Install the air cleaner cover (B) and tighten the 5 bolts.


E162539

3. Position the air cleaner assembly (A) onto the engine and make sure the assembly is aligned with the studs.

E162540

4. Install and tighten the bolts to each side of the air cleaner assembly (A) as shown with arrows.

E162541

5. Install and tighten the bolts to each side of the air cleaner assembly (A) as shown with arrows.
6. Connect the PCV tube (D) to the air cleaner outlet tube ©).
7. Connect the air cleaner intake tube (E) to the air cleaner assembly (A).

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)

Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)

Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]

Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S. only) (ZC-32-B1)

Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)

Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)

Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to your vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.*

Stripes or Graphics (if equipped)

Do not use a commercial or high-pressure sprayer on the surface or edge of stripes and graphics. This can cause damage to the film and cause the edge of the film to peel away from the vehicle surface.

Exterior Chrome

Note: *Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels and wheel covers*

- Wash your vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash.
- Use Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft Detail Wash.
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer’s instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.
- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer fluid.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNINGS

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

WARNINGS

On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING

Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
4. Remove the soaked cloth and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.
5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a soft cloth.

If you cannot completely clean the leather using a mild soap and water solution, you can try a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.

Note: *To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.*

You should:

- remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner
- clean spills and stains as quickly as possible
- check for compatibility by first testing any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners
- household cleaners
- alcohol solutions
- solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle stored in exposed locations.

- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when your vehicle is washed.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- The engine oil and filter should be changed prior to storage, as used engine oil contain contaminates that may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days. Run at fast idle until it reaches normal operating temperature
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, it may be advisable to disconnect the battery cables to ensure battery charge is maintained for quick starting.

Note: *If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.*

Brakes

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 meters) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage (mice/squirrel nests).
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.

- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 feet (4.5 meters) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If the battery was removed, clean the battery cable ends and inspect.

Contact your authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

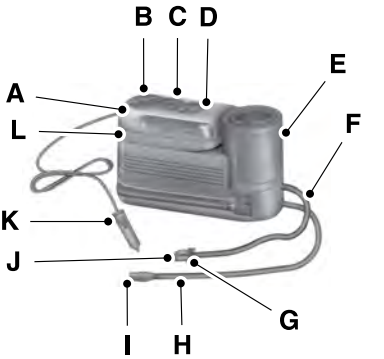
TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Note: *You should use the temporary mobility kit sealant compound in the canister for one tire only. See your Ford authorized dealer for additional replacement sealant canisters.*

E164703

The kit is located under the front-row passenger seat. Loosen the Velcro strap to access the kit.

The kit consists of an air compressor to reinflate the tire and a sealing compound in a canister that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit will provide a temporary seal allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 miles (200 kilometers) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).



E144618

A	Air compressor (inside)
B	Diverter knob
C	On and off button
D	Air pressure gauge
E	Sealant bottle and canister
F	Sealant filling clear tube
G	Sealant tube - tire valve connector
H	Yellow cap tool
I	Air compressor hose
J	Air hose-tire valve connector
K	Accessory power plug
L	Casing and housing

General Information

WARNING

Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Note: *Do not use the kit to repair a severely damaged tire, damaged from driving the vehicle with a tire that has insufficient air pressure. You can only use the kit to seal punctured areas located within the tire tread.*

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 1.4 inch (6.4 millimeters) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

Note: *Do not drive the vehicle above 50 mph (80 km/h).*

Note: *Do not drive further than 120 miles (200 kilometers). Drive only to the closest Ford Motor Company authorized dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.*

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure of safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

Tips for Use of the Kit

Read the following list of tips to make sure of safe operation of the kit:

- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Turn on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to make sure the vehicle does not move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, leave the engine running (only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area) so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes; this will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended when it is operating.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Make sure that you use the non-latex gloves provided to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -22°F (–30°C) and 158°F (70°C).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use by date. The use by date is on the lower right hand corner of the label located on the sealant canister (bottle). Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister after four years.
- Do not store the kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or crash. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, you must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel by an authorized Ford dealer.

- When inflating a tire or other objects, use the black air hose only. Do not use the transparent hose, which is designed for sealant application only.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD, and DVD player operation.

What to Do When a Tire Is Punctured

Repair a tire puncture within the tread area of the tire in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, you will re-inflate the tire with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been re-inflated, drive the vehicle a short distance (about 4 miles [6 kilometers]) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air

WARNINGS

Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.

If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

Preparation: Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic. Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and turn the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

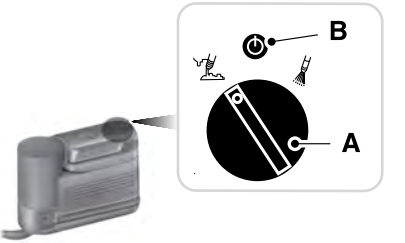
Sealant compound contains latex. To avoid any allergic reactions, use the non-latex gloves located in the accessory box on the underside of the kit housing.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the clear tube from the compressor housing.
3. Remove the tube cap and fasten the metal connector of the tube to the tire valve, turning clockwise. Make sure you fasten the connection tightly.

E144619

4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the canister, and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
6. Start the vehicle only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.



E144924

7. Push and turn dial (A) counterclockwise to the sealant position. Turn on the kit by pressing the on and off button (B).

E144621

8. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver's door or the door jamb area. When you first add the sealing compound into the tire, the air pressure gauge reading on the compressor unit may indicate a higher value; this is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure will drop after about 30 seconds of operation. You have to check the tire pressure with the compressor in the OFF position to get the correct tire pressure reading.
9. When you reach the recommended tire pressure, turn off the kit by pressing the on button; disconnect the kit from the tire valve and the power point. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve, place the tube cap on the metal connector, and return the kit to the stowage area
10. Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 miles (6 kilometers) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
11. After 4 miles (6 kilometers), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second stage: Checking tire pressure.

Note: *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.*

Note: *Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.*

Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure

WARNINGS

If you are proceeding from the First stage: Re–inflating the tire with sealing compound and air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 20 psi (1.4 bar), stop and call roadside assistance. If tire pressure is above 20 psi (1.4 bar), continue to the next step.

The power plug may get hot after use and you should handle it carefully while unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unhook the black hose from the side of the compressor and fasten firmly on the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position. Turn on the kit by pressing the on button.

E144622

4. Adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure from the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area. You have to check the tire pressure with the compressor in the OFF position to get the correct tire pressure reading.
5. Turn the compressor off by pressing the off button.
6. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

What to Do after the Tire has Been Sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, replace the sealant canister and clear tube (hose). Obtain and replace the sealing compound and spare parts at an authorized Ford Motor Company dealership or tire dealer. You can dispose empty sealant bottles at home. However, liquid residue from the sealing compound should be disposed by your local Ford Motor Company dealership or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

Note: *After you use the sealing compound, the maximum vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) and the maximum driving distance is 120 miles (200 kilometers). Inspect the sealed tire immediately.*

Note: *After you use the sealant, an authorized Ford dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and the valve stem on the wheel.*

Check the tire pressure any time within the 120 miles (200 kilometers) by performing the procedure from Second stage: Checking tire pressure listed previously.

Removal of the Sealant Canister from the Kit

E144623

1. Unwrap the clear tube from the compressor housing.

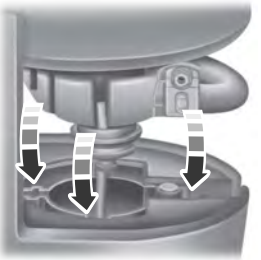
E144624

2. Locate the yellow cap at the end of the clear tube.

E144625

3. Using the yellow cap tool, press the tab located on the kit compressor housing while pulling up on the sealant canister.

Installation of the Sealant Canister to the Kit



E144626

1. Align the sealant canister with the kit housing.

E161567

2. Once aligned, seat the sealant canister by lightly pushing down until you hear an audible click.

E144628

3. Wrap the clear tube around the compressor housing.

Note: *If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult your Ford Motor Company authorized dealer for assistance.*

Use By / Utiliser avant:

E144629

Be sure to check the sealant compound's use by date regularly. The use by date is on the lower right hand corner of the label located on the sealant canister (bottle). You should replace the sealant canister after four years.

TIRE CARE

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading

E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Tire Quality Grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**.

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1 ½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

*__Tire label:__ A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

*__Tire Identification Number (TIN):__ A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

*__Inflation pressure:__ A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

*__Standard load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load-carrying capability.

*__Extra load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load-carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 kilometers).

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position) or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

* **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

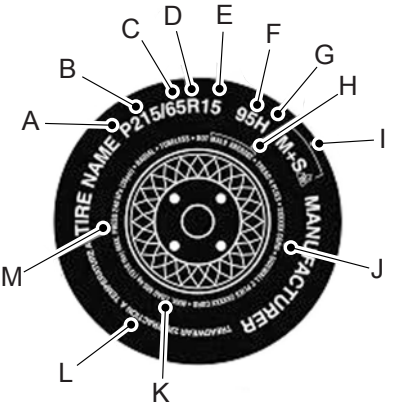
***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner’s manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)

Letter rating	mph (km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

H. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

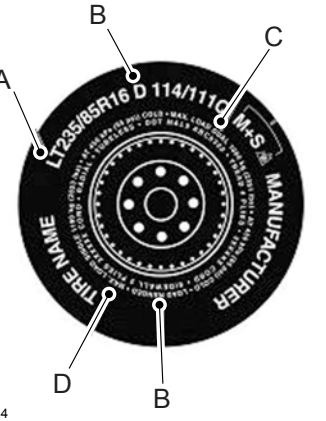
***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure, or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. These differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

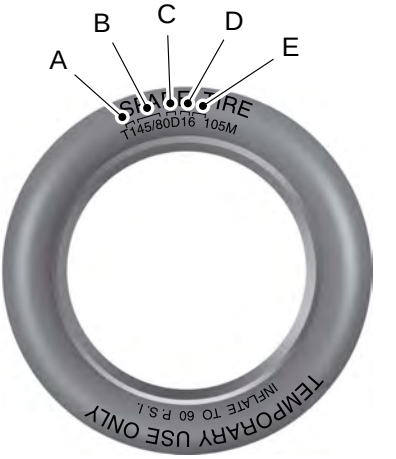
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. These differences are described below.

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport-utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio, which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns

WARNING

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label

(affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10ºF (6ºC) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1 mile [1.6 kilometers]), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T type mini-spare tires, see the Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly section. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information section. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

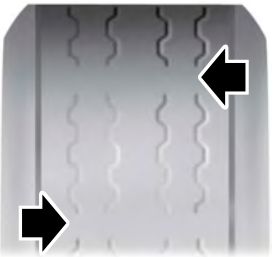
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters)

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

WARNING

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (such as load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and

describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNINGS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size

WARNINGS

may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver’s door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again

WARNINGS

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.

2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.

3. Stand at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle

The two front tires or two rear tires should generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, the system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNINGS

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires. Spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

*Observe posted speed limits

*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns

*Avoid potholes and objects on the road

*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire Rotation

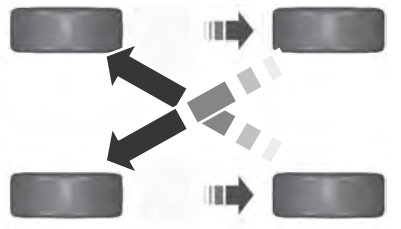
Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

Note: *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the scheduled maintenance information) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Front-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram)



E142547

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING

Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. Snow chains have not been approved for use on your vehicle.

Consult your authorized dealer for information on other Ford Motor Company approved methods of traction control.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see Inflating your tires in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Note: *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor*

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See Inflating Your Tires in this chapter.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30ºF (17ºC) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING

When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M12 x 1.5	100 (135)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine	2.0L ATK iVCT Engine
Cubic inches	98
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-3-4-2
Ignition system	Coil on plug (COP)
Compression ratio	12.3:1
Spark plug gap	0.051 in. ± 0.002 in. (1.3 mm ± 0.05 mm)

MOTORCRAFT PARTS

Component	2.0L ATK iVCT engine
Air filter element[1]	FA-1911
Oil filter[2]	FL-910-S
Low-Voltage Battery	BXT-96R-500 BXT-96R-590
Spark plugs[3]	CYFS12YPC5/SP531
Cabin air filter	FP70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-29 (driver side) WW-25 (passenger side)
Rear wiper blade	WW-12

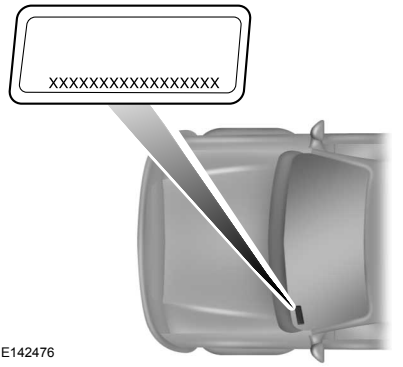
[1] Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

[2] Only use the specified replacement oil filter. The use of a non-specified oil filter can result in engine damage.

[3] For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. Refer to Scheduled Maintenance for the replacement intervals. **Note:** Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

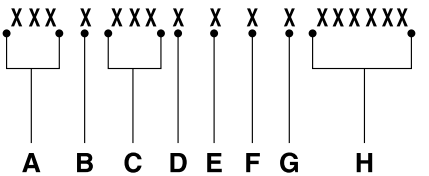
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

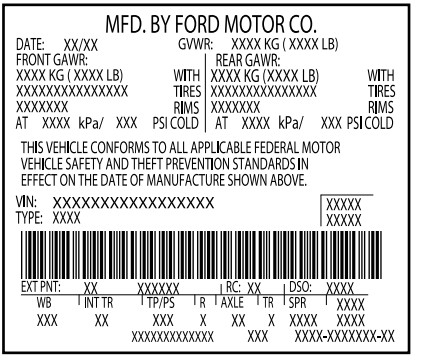
The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

A	World manufacturer identifier
B	Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
C	Make, vehicle line, series, body type
D	Engine type
E	Check digit
F	Model year
G	Assembly plant
H	Production sequence number

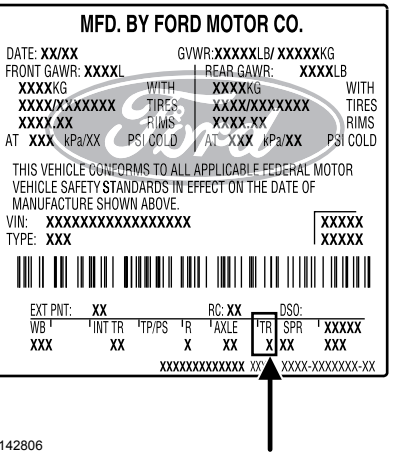
VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



E142806

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Electronic continuously variable transmission (HF35 eCVT)	J

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Brake fluid [1]	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft™ DOT 4 LV High Performance	PM-20 / WSS-M6C65-A2
Hinges, latches, striker plates and rotors, seat tracks, fuel filler door hinge and spring	Not applicable	Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Grease Spray	Motorcraft XL-5 (aerosol) and/or CRCSL3151ESB / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinder	Not applicable	Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant (US); Motorcraft Penetrating Fluid (Canada)	XL-1 (U.S.) / --
			CXC-51-A (Canada) / --
Automatic transmission fluid [2, 3, 4]	5.7 quarts (5.4L)	Motorcraft MERCON™ LV ATF	XT-10-QLVC (U.S.) / MERCON LV
			CXT-10-LV12 (Canada) / MERCON LV
Engine oil [5, 6, 7]	4.5 quarts (4.3L)	Motorcraft SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil	XO-0W20-QSP (U.S.) XO-0W20-QFS (U.S.) / WSS-M2C947-A with API certification mark
			CXO-0W20-LSP12 (Canada) CXO-0W20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C947-A with API certification mark
C-MAX engine coolant [8]	8.2 quarts (7.8L)	Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze / Coolant Prediluted	VC-3DIL-B (U.S.) CVC-3DIL-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D2
C-MAX Energi engine Coolant[8]	8.8 quarts (8.3L)		

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Inverter system controller coolant[8]	1.1 quarts (1L)		
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrates (U.S. only)	ZC-32-A1 or ZC-32-B1 (U.S.) / WSS-M14P19-A
C-MAX fuel tank	13.5 gallons (51.1L)	—	—
C-MAX Energi fuel tank	14 gallons (53L)		
A/C refrigerant[9]	1.63 lb (0.74 kg)	Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant	YN-19 (U.S.) / WSH-M17B19-A
			CYN-16-R (Canada) / WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil[9]	5.2 fluid ounces (153.8ml)	Motorcraft Electric A/C Refrigerant Compressor Oil	YN-32 /--

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
			WSS-M2C231-B2

[1]Use only Motorcraft DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A1. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause brake system damage.

[2]Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

[3]Automatic transmissions that require Motorcraft MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use Motorcraft MERCON LV transmission fluid.

Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See the Scheduled Maintenance chapter for service intervals.

[4]See your authorized dealer for fluid level checking or filling.

[5]The design of your engine allows for the use of Motorcraft engine oils or equivalent oils that meet Ford specifications. It is also acceptable to use an engine oil of recommended viscosity grade that meets API SN requirements and displays the API certification mark for gasoline engines.

[6]Do not use supplemental engine oil additives in your engine. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage not covered by your Ford warranty.

[7]You can use 5W-20 oil if 0W-20 oil is not available.

[8]Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

[9]See the warning below.

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Have the air conditioning refrigerant system serviced only by qualified personnel.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

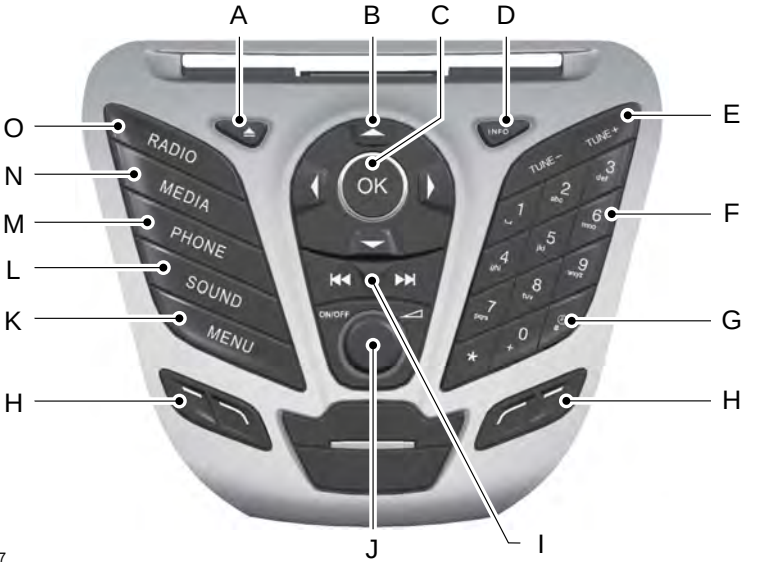
In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the .mp3 files in the current folder.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *You can operate your audio system for up to one hour after you switch off the ignition. Press the* ***ON/OFF*** *control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.*



A **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.

B **Cursor arrows:** Press these buttons to scroll through on-screen audio system choices.

C **OK:** Press this button to confirm menu selections.

D **INFO:** Press this button to access any available radio or CD information.

E **TUNE - and TUNE +:** Press these buttons to manually search the frequency band.

F **Number block:** In radio mode, store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

G **Clock:** Push to access clock settings. You can also set the clock by pressing the **MENU** button and scrolling to Clock Settings.

H **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

I **Seek:** Press and release these buttons to go to the previous or next preset radio station or disc track. Press and hold these buttons to fast forward to the previous or next strong radio station, memory preset or through the current disc track.

J **ON/OFF:** Press this button to switch the system off and on. Turn to adjust the volume.

K **MENU:** Press this button to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this section.

L **SOUND:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Middle, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

M **PHONE:** Press this button to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See **SYNC™** (page 287).

N **MEDIA:** Press this button to switch between listening to a CD and the SYNC-Media menu. To change the SYNC-Media device (such as switching from a device plugged into the USB port to a Bluetooth audio device), press **MENU** and scroll to Select Source.

O **RADIO:** Press this button to listen to the radio or change radio frequencies. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select different radio functions.

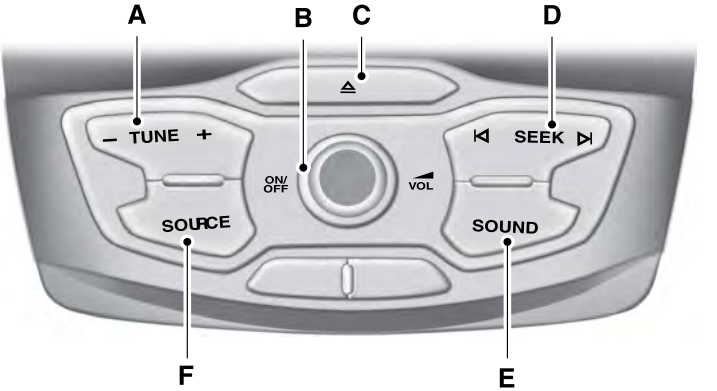
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.*

Note: *The MyFord Touch system controls most of the audio features. See **MyFord Touch™** (page 322).*



E143843

A **- TUNE +:** Press this button to manually search through the radio frequency band.

B **ON/OFF and VOL:** Press this button to switch the audio system off and on. Turn to adjust the volume.

C **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.

D **SEEK:** Press this button to go to the next station up or down the radio frequency band or the next or previous track on a CD.

E **SOUND:** Press this button to adjust the sound settings for Bass, Treble, Balance and Fade.

F **SOURCE:** Press this button to access different audio modes, such as AM, FM and A/V Input.

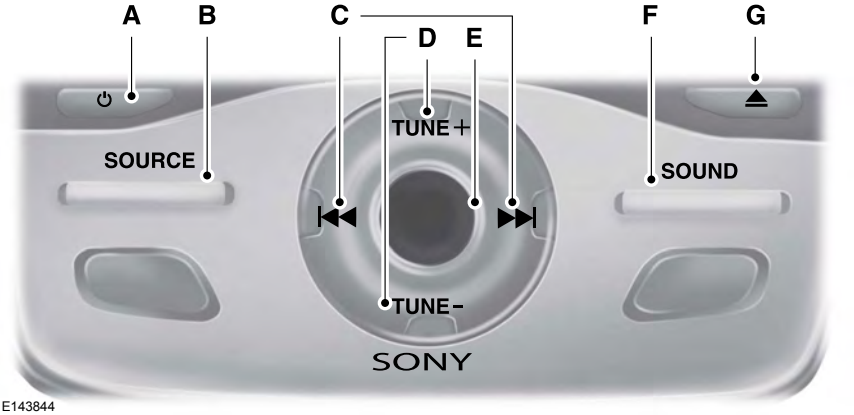
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AM/FM/CD

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.*

Note: *The MyFord Touch system controls most of the audio features. See* ***MyFord Touch™*** *(page 322).*



A **Power:** Press this button to switch the system off and on.

B **SOURCE:** Press this button to access different audio modes, such as AM, FM and A/V Input.

C **Seek, Reverse and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press these buttons. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, press these buttons to select the previous or next channel. If a specific category is selected (such as Jazz, Rock or News), use these buttons to find the previous or next channel in the selected category. In CD mode, press these buttons to select the previous or next track.

D **- TUNE +:** In radio mode, press these buttons to manually search through the radio frequency band. In SIRIUS mode, press these buttons to find the next or previous available satellite radio station.

E **Volume:** Turn this control to adjust the volume.

F **SOUND:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Middle, Bass, Balance and Fade.

G **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.

Menu Structure

Note: *Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.*

Press **MENU**.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu. Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press **OK** to confirm a selection.

Radio	
Manual tune	Use the left and right arrows to go up or down the frequency band.
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
PTY/Set Category	Select to have the system search by certain music categories (such as Rock, Pop or Country).
RBDS/RDS	Select to view additional broadcast data, if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS must be on for you to set a category.

SIRIUS	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
Show ESN	Select to view your satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN). You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS® to activate, modify or track your account.
Channel Guide	Select to view available satellite radio channels. Press **OK** to open a list of the following options for this channel: Tune Channel, Skip Channel or Lock Channel. Once you skip or lock a channel, you can only access it by pressing Direct and entering the channel number. Locking or unlocking a channel requires your PIN.

SIRIUS	
Set Category	Select to view channel categories (such as Pop, Rock or News). If you select a category, seek and scan functions only stop on channels in that category.
Alerts	Select to turn off or turn on alerts for songs, artists or teams. The system alerts you when the selection is playing on another channel. Save up to 20 alerts.
Unlock All Stations	Use your PIN to unlock previously locked stations.
Skip No stations	Use to restore any channels you previously skipped.
Parental Lock (PIN)	Select to create a PIN, which allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.

Audio Settings	
Spd. Comp. Vol.	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Middle, Bass, Fade and Balance.
Occupancy Mode	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
RBDS/RDS Text	Select to view additional broadcast data, if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS must be on for you to set a category.
DSP	Choose between STEREO SURROUND mode and STEREO mode.

CD Settings	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.
CD Compression	Select to bring soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level.

Clock Settings	
Set Time	Select to set the time.
Set Date	Select to set the calendar date.
24h Mode	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

DIGITAL RADIO

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the HD Radio logo on your screen. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or **Direct Tune**.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when **Scan** is pressed.	Pressing **Scan** disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

* http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

SATELLITE RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.sirius.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

Satellite Radio Reception Factors

Potential satellite radio reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

Note: *SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*

E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.sirius.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, press **Options**.

Troubleshooting

Radio display	Condition	Possible action
Acquiring	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Call SIRIUS 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check Channel Guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

AUDIO INPUT JACK

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.

E149149

The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8th-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** until **LINE** or **LINE IN** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

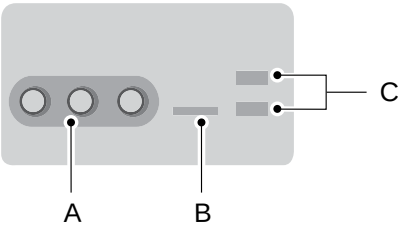
USB PORT (IF EQUIPPED)

E142604

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **SYNC™** (page 287).

MEDIA HUB (IF EQUIPPED)

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:

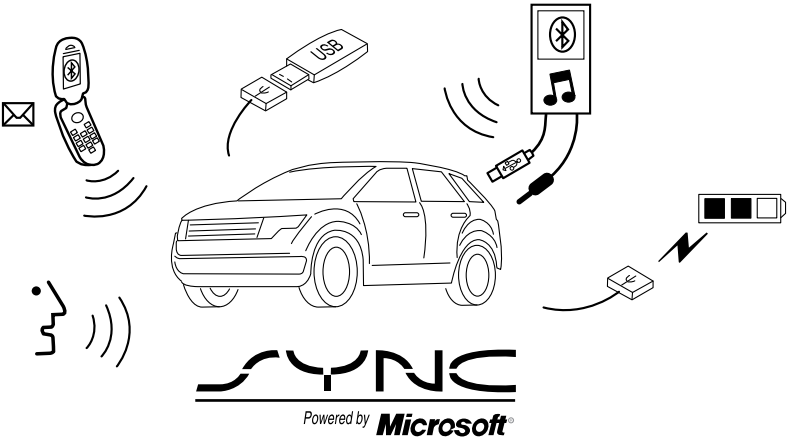


E142605

A	A/V inputs
B	SD card slot
C	USB ports

See **MyFord Touch™** (page 322).

GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services (Traffic, Directions & Information).*
- Use applications, such as Pandora and Stitcher, via SYNC AppLink.
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

*These features require activation.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Required to activate Vehicle Health Report and to view the reports online.
- Required to activate the subscription-based SYNC Services and to personalize your Saved Points and Favorites.
- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h).

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report, and Traffic, Directions and Information.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

Initiating a Voice Session

Push the voice icon. A tone sounds and Listening appears in the display. Say any of the following:

Say	If You Want To
"Bluetooth audio"	Stream audio from your phone.
"Cancel"	Cancel the requested action.
"Line in"	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
"Mobile apps" *	Access mobile applications.
"Phone"	Make calls.
"Services" *	Access the SYNC Services portal.
"SYNC"	Return to the main menu.
"USB"	Access the device connected to your USB port.
"Vehicle health report" *	Run a vehicle health report.
"Voice settings"	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
"Help"	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

* This is an optional feature and available in the United States only.

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings). You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level

Push the voice icon. Say "Voice settings" when prompted, then any of the following:

When you say:	The system:
"Interaction mode standard"	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.
"Interaction mode advanced"	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. For example, the system may ask "Phone, is that correct?". If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested and may ask you to confirm settings.

When you say:	The system:
"Confirmation prompts off"	Makes a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
"Confirmation prompts on"	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates candidate lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command. When turned on, it may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, say "Say 1 after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say 2 after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say 3 after the tone to call Jane Doe at home." You could also say "Say 1 after the tone to play John Doe, Say 2 after the tone to play Johnny Doe."

When you say:	The system:
"Media candidate lists off"	Makes a best guess from the media candidate list. You may still occasionally be asked questions.
"Media candidate lists on"	Clarifies your voice command for media candidates.
"Phone candidate lists off"	Makes a best guess from the phone candidate list. You may still occasionally be asked questions.
"Phone candidate lists on"	Clarifies your voice command for phone candidates

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing a Phone for the First Time

Note: *SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 1000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.*

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Put the transmission in position **P**.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

1. Press the phone button. When the display indicates there is no phone paired, press **OK**.
2. When **Find SYNC** appears in the display, press **OK**.
3. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your device's manual if necessary.
4. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Put the transmission in position **P**.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Press the phone button, and then scroll to System Settings. Press **OK**.
2. Scroll to Bluetooth Devices. Press **OK**.
3. Scroll to Add Bluetooth Device. Press **OK**.
4. When **Find SYNC** appears in the display, press **OK**.
5. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your phone's manual if necessary.
6. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

The system then prompts with questions, such as if you would like to set the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and download your phone book.

Phone Voice Commands

Press the voice icon and say "Phone". Say any of the following:

"PHONE"
"Call <name>"[1,2]
"Call <name> at home"[1,2]
"Call <name> at work"[1,2]
"Call <name> in office"[1,2]
"Call <name> on mobile OR cell"[1,2]
"Call <name> on other"[1,2]
"Call history incoming"[2]
"Call history missed"[2]

"PHONE"
"Call history outgoing"[2]
"Connections"[2]
"Dial"[1,3]
"Go to privacy"
"Hold"
"Join"
"Menu"[2,4]
"Phone book <name>"[2]
"Phone book <name> at home"[2]
"Phone book <name> at office"[2]
"Phone book <name> at work" [2]
"Phone book <name> on mobile OR cell"[2]
"Phone book <name> on other"[2]

[1] This command does not require you to say "Phone" first.

[2] This command is not available until phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth.

[3] See **Dial** table below.

[4] See **Menu** table below.

Phone book commands: When you ask SYNC to access things such as a phonebook name or number, the requested information appears in the display to view. Press the phone button and say, "Call" to call the contact.

"DIAL"
"411 (four-one-one)", "911" (nine-one-one)
"700" (seven hundred)
"800" (eight hundred)
"900" (nine hundred)
"Pound" (#)
"Number <0-9>"
"Asterisk" (*)
"Clear" (deletes all entered digits)
"Delete" (deletes one digit)
"Plus"
"Star"

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press **MENU** to go to the phone menu.*

"MENU"
"(Phone) connections"
"(Phone) settings (message) notification off"
"(Phone) settings (message) notification on"
"(Phone) settings (set) phone ringer"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 1"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 2"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 3"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer off"
"Battery"
"Phone name"

"MENU"
"Signal"
"Text message inbox"

Words in ( ) are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

Making Calls

Press the voice icon and when prompted say:

1. Say "Call <name>" or "Dial", then the desired number.
2. When the system confirms the number, say, "Dial" again to initiate the call.

To erase the last spoken digit, say, "Delete" or press the left arrow button. To erase all spoken digits, say "Clear" or press and hold the left arrow button.

To end the call, press and hold the phone button.

Receiving Calls

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the phone button.
- Reject the call by pressing and holding the phone button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have more menu features that become available, such as putting a call on hold or joining calls. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

1. Press **MENU** during an active call.
2. After selecting Active Call Menu, press **OK**.
3. Scroll to cycle through the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Mute Call?	Mute the call.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cellular phone for a more private conversation. Press **OK** when **Privacy on/off** appears. (The display indicates In Privacy and the system transfers your call.)
Call Hold	Put an active call on hold. Press **OK** when **Hold on/off** appears. To answer another call at this time, press the phone button.
Enter Tones	Enter "tones", such as numbers for passwords. Scroll until the desired number appears in the display, then press OK; a tone sounds as confirmation. Repeat as necessary.
Join Calls	Join two separate calls. (SYNC supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty call or conference call.) 1. Press the phone button.

When you select:	You can:
	2. Access the desired contact through SYNC or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, press **MENU**. 3. Scroll to Join Calls, and press **OK**. Press **OK** again when **Join Calls?** appears.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Press **OK** to select, and then scroll through your phonebook contacts. 2. Press **OK** again when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button.
Call History	Access your call history log. 1. Press **OK** to select, then scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 2. Press **OK** when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button to call the selection.
Return	Exit the current menu.

Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

SYNC's phone menu allows you to redial a number, access your call history and phonebook and sends text messages as well as access phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features, such as 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services.

1. Press the phone button to enter the phone menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

When you select:	You can:
Phone Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press **OK** to select, and then press **OK** again to confirm.
Call History[1]	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls after you connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to SYNC. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select from Call History Incoming, Call History Outgoing or Call History Missed. Press **OK** to make your selection. 3. Press **OK** or the phone button to call the desired selection.

When you select:	You can:
	Note: The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your phone connects to SYNC (if the auto download feature is on and your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone supports this feature).
Phonebook[1,2]	Access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phonebook. 1. Press **OK** to confirm and enter. If your phonebook has fewer than 255 listings, they appear alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255 entries, the system organizes them into alphabetical categories. 2. Scroll until the desired contact appears, then press **OK**. 3. Press **OK** or the phone button.
Text Message[1]	Send, download and delete text messages.
Phone Settings [1]	View your phone's status, set ring tones, select your message notification, change phone book entries and automatically download your cellular phone among other features.
SYNC Services[3]	Access the SYNC Services portal where you can request various types of information, traffic reports and directions.
911 Assist[4]	Place an emergency call to a 911 operator for you after an accident, when used properly.
Vehicle Health Report[3]	Create and receive a diagnostic report card on your vehicle.
Mobile Apps[3]	Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.
System Settings	Access Bluetooth Devices menu listings (Add, Connect, Set as Primary, On and Off, Delete) as well as Advanced menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).
Exit Phone Menu	Exit the phone menu by pressing OK.

[1] This is a phone-dependent feature.

[2] This is a phone-dependent and speed-dependent feature.

[3] This is an optional feature and available in the United States only.

[4] This is an optional feature and available in the United States and Canada only.

Text Messaging

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature.*

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the display indicates you have a new message. You have these options:

- Press the voice button, wait for the prompt and say "Read message" to have SYNC read the message to you.
- Press **OK** to receive and open the text message or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Press **OK** again and SYNC reads your message aloud as you are not able to view the message. You can then also choose to reply or forward the message.
- Press **OK** and scroll to choose between:
  - **Reply to Text Message**: Press **OK** to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
  - **Forward Text Message**: Press **OK** to forward the message to anyone in your Phonebook or Call History. You can also choose Enter Number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

Note: *Forwarding a text message is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

Note: *You can only have one recipient per text message.*

Text messaging is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone is compatible, SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll to Text Message, and then press **OK**.

Scroll to select from the following options:

- **Send Text Message?** allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
- **Download Unread Msgs** allows you to download your unread messages (only) to SYNC. To download the messages, press **OK** to select. The display indicates that it is downloading your messages. When it is complete, SYNC takes you to your inbox.
- **Delete All Messages?** allows you to delete current text messages from SYNC (not your phone). To delete the messages, press **OK** to select. The display indicates when it is finished deleting all your text messages. SYNC returns you to the text message menu.
- **Return** exits the current menu when you press **OK**.

If you select **Send Text Message?**:

1. Press **OK** to select. If the system detects your phone does not support this feature, **Unsupported** appears in the display and SYNC returns to the main menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through the message options in the following chart.

3. Press **OK** when the desired selection is in the display.
4. Enter the name of the recipient. Scroll to cycle through Phonebook or Call History entries. You can also select Enter Number to say the desired number.
5. Press **OK** to enter the desired menu and scroll to select the specific contact.
6. Press OK when the contact appears and press OK again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. The system sends each text message with the following signature: "This message was sent from my <Ford or Lincoln>".

Pre-defined text message options
Can't talk right now
Call me
Call U later
Be there in 10 minutes
Be there in 20 minutes
Yes

Pre-defined text message options
No
Why?
Thanks
Where R you?
I need more directions
I love you
Too funny
Can't wait to see you
I'm stuck in traffic

Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll to Phone Settings, and then press **OK**.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Phone Status	See the provider, name, signal power, battery power and roaming status of your connected phone. Press **OK** to select and scroll to view the information. When done, press **OK** again to return to the phone status menu.
Set Ringer	Select which ring tone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your phone's). 1. Press **OK** to select and scroll to hear Ringer 1, Ringer 2, Ringer 3 and Phone Ringer. 2. Press **OK** to select.

When you select:	You can:
	If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ring tone plays when you choose Phone Ringer.
Message Notification	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. 1. Press **OK** to select and scroll between Message Notification On and Message Notification Off. 2. Press **OK** to select.
Modify Phonebook	Modify the contents of your phonebook (such as add, delete or download). Press **OK** to choose between:
	Add Contacts: Press **OK** to add more contacts from your phone book. Push the desired contact(s) on your phone. See your phone's manual on how to push contacts.
	Delete Phonebook: Press **OK** to delete the current phone book and call history. When **Delete Phonebook** appears, press **OK** to confirm. SYNC takes you back to the Phone Settings menu.
	Download Phonebook: Press **OK** to select, then and press **OK** again when **Confirm Download?** appears.
Auto Download	Automatically download your phone book each time your phone connects to SYNC.* Press **OK** to select. When **Auto Download On?** appears, press **OK** to have your phonebook automatically downloaded each time.** Select Off if you do not want to download your phonebook every time your phone connects to SYNC. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your specific phone is connected to SYNC.
Return	Exit the current menu.

*Downloading times are phone-dependent and quantity-dependent.

**When Auto Download is on, it automatically deletes any changes, additions or deletions saved since your last download.

System Settings

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices, set a phone as primary as well as turn your Bluetooth feature on and off.

1. Press the phone button to enter the phone menu
2. Scroll to System Settings. Press **OK**.
3. Scroll to Bluetooth Devices. Press **OK**.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

If you select:	You can:
Add Bluetooth Device*	See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 291).
Connect Bluetooth Device	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone.** 1. Press **OK** to select and view a list of previously paired phones. 2. Scroll until you find the desired device, and then press **OK** to connect the phone.
Set as Primary Phone	Set a previously paired phone as your primary phone. Press **OK** to select and scroll to select the desired phone. Press **OK** to confirm. SYNC attempts to connect with the primary phone at every ignition cycle. When you select a phone as a primary phone, it appears first in the list and the system marks it with an asterisk.
Set Bluetooth	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. Press **OK** and scroll to toggle between On and Off. Make a selection, and then press **OK**. Setting Bluetooth to off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and turns off all Bluetooth features.
Delete Device	Delete a paired phone. Press **OK** and scroll to select the device. Press **OK** to confirm.
Delete All Devices	Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones). Press **OK** to select.
Return	Exit the current menu.

* This is a speed-dependent feature.

**You can only connect one device at a time. When another phone is connected, the previous one is disconnected.

Advanced

The Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

1. Press the phone button to enter the phone menu
2. Scroll to System Settings. Press **OK**.
3. Scroll to Advanced. Press **OK**.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

If you select:	You can:
Prompts	Get help from SYNC by using questions, helpful hints or asking you for a specific action. To turn these prompts on or off: 1. Press **OK** to select and scroll to select between On and Off. 2. Press **OK** when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Languages	Choose between English, Français and Español. Once selected, all of the radio displays and prompts are in the selected language. 1. Press **OK** to select and then scroll through the languages. 2. Press **OK** when the desired selection appears in the display. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Factory Defaults	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). 1. Press **OK** to select and then press **OK** again when **Restore Defaults?** appears in the display. 2. Press **OK** to confirm.
Master Reset	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Press **OK** to select. The display indicates when complete and SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Install Application?	Install applications you have downloaded. Press **OK** and scroll to select. Press **OK** to confirm.
Delete All Devices	Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones). Press **OK** to select.
System Info	Access the Auto Version number as well as the FDN number.

If you select:	You can:
	Press **OK** to select.
MAP Profile	This is a Bluetooth component, which can further help your phone with the exchange of text messages.
Return	Exit the current menu.

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

In order for the following features to work, your cellular phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- SYNC Services*: Provides access to traffic, directions and information such as travel, horoscopes, stock prices and more.
- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- Vehicle Health Report*: Provides a diagnostic and maintenance report card of your vehicle.

*This is an optional feature and available in the United States only.

911 Assist

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

WARNINGS

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user turns 911 Assist on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message (or icon) comes on (or both) when your vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 34). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 187). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Setting 911 Assist On

1. Press the phone button to enter the phone menu.
2. Scroll to select 911 Assist.
3. Press **OK** to confirm and enter the 911 Assist menu.
4. Scroll to select between On and Off.
5. Press **OK** when the desired option appears in the radio display. **Set On** or **Set Off** appears in the display as confirmation.

Off selections include:

- Off with reminder: Provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start.
- Off without reminder: Provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you turn on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

Vehicle Health Report

WARNING

Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace, normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems electronically monitored by your vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (such as brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Note: *This feature is only available in the United States.*

Note: *Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation before use. Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.*

Note: *This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Before running a report, review the Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice.*

Note: *In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.*

Note: *Cellular phone and SMS charges may apply when making a report.*

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at www.SYNCMyRide.com. After registering, you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at www.SYNCMyRide.com to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to remind you automatically to run reports at specific mileage intervals.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of a diagnostic report card. The vehicle health report contains valuable information such as:

- Vehicle diagnostic information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open recalls and Field Service Actions
- Items noted during vehicle inspections by an authorized dealer that still need servicing.

You can run a report (after your vehicle has been running a minimum of 60 seconds) by pressing the voice button and saying "Vehicle health report", or pressing the phone button.

To run a report using the phone button:

1. Press the phone button to enter phone menu.
2. Scroll to select Vehicle Health, and then press **OK**.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Vehicle health report options	
User Preferences: Press **OK** to select and enter the menu. Scroll to select from:	**Automatic Reports:** Press **OK** to and select On or Off. Select On to have SYNC automatically prompt you to run a health report at certain mileage intervals.*
	Mileage Intervals: Press **OK**. Scroll to select between 5000, 7500 or 10000-mile intervals and press **OK** to make your selection.
	Return: Press OK to exit the menu.
Run Report?	Press **OK** for SYNC to run a health report of your vehicle's diagnostic systems and send the results to Ford where it combines with scheduled maintenance information, open recalls and other field service actions and vehicle inspection items that still need servicing from an authorized dealer.

*You must first turn this feature on before you can select the desired mileage interval.

Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you create a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect more vehicle information. Ford may use your vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at www.SYNCMyRide.com. See www.SYNCMyRide.com (Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement) for more information.

SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions & Information (TDI)

Note: *SYNC Services requires activation before use. Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See* ***Using SYNC™ With Your Phone*** *(page 291).*

Note: *This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Make sure your cellular phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.*

Note: *The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features provided are only an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, place you in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.*

Note: *When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect your vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request, for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at www.SYNCMyRide.com. If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect your vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not subscribe or use the service.*

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit www.SYNCMyRide.com.

Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands

1. Press the voice button.
2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.
3. Once you connect to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, such as Traffic or Directions. You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Phone Menu

1. Press the phone button to enter the phone menu.
2. Scroll to Services.
3. Press **OK** to confirm and enter the Services menu. The display indicates the system is connecting.
4. Press **OK**. SYNC initiates the call to the Services portal.
5. Once you connect to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, such as Traffic or Directions. You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
6. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say "Directions" or "Business search". To find the closest business or type of business to your current location, just say "Business search" and then "Search near me". If you need further assistance in finding a location you can say "Operator" at any time within a

Directions or Business search to speak with a live operator. The system may prompt you to speak with an operator when it has difficulty matching your voice request. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com/support.

2. Follow the voice prompts to select your destination. Once you select your destination, the system uploads your current vehicle location, calculates a route based on current traffic conditions and sends it back to your vehicle. After the route download is complete, the phone call automatically ends. You then receive audible and visual driving instructions as you travel toward your destination.
3. While on an active route, you can select or say "Route summary" or "Route status" to view the Route Summary turn list or the Route Status ETA. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say, "Yes" when prompted and the system sends a new route to your vehicle.

Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say "Goodbye" from the SYNC Services main menu.

SYNC Services quick tips	
Personalizing	You can personalize your Services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points such as work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams or a news category. You can learn more about personalization by logging onto www.SYNCMyRide.com.
Push to interrupt	Press the voice button at any time (while connected to SYNC Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report) and say your voice command.
Portable	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with SYNC Services and continue enjoying your personalized services. You can even access your account outside your vehicle. Just use the number on your phone's call history. Traffic and Directions features do not function properly but information services and the 411 connect and text message features are available.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, such as artist and album.

Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.*

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod®, Zune™, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into the USB port.
2. Press the voice icon and when prompted, say "USB".
3. You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See the media voice commands.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into the USB port.
2. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the media menu.
3. Scroll to Select Source. Press **OK**.
4. Scroll to USB. Press **OK**.
5. Depending on how many digital media files are on your connected device, **Indexing** may appear in the radio display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the Play menu.

Press **OK** and scroll through selections of:

- Play All
- Albums
- Genres
- Playlists
- Tracks
- Explore USB
- Similar Music
- Return

What's Playing?

At any time when a track is playing, you can press the voice icon and ask the system "What's playing?". The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the playing track to you.

Media Voice Commands

Press the voice icon. When prompted, say "USB", then any of the following:

"USB"
"Autoplay off"
"Autoplay on"
"Connections"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play album <name>"[1,2]
"Play all"
"Play artist <name>"[1,2]
"Play genre <name>"[1,2]
"Play next folder"[3]
"Play next track"

"USB"
"Play playlist <name>"[1,2]
"Play previous folder"[3]
"Play previous track"
"Play song <name>"[1,2]
"Play track <name>"[1,2]
"Refine album <name>"[1,2]
"Refine artist <name>"[1,2]
"Refine song <name>"[1,2]
"Refine track <name>"[1,2]
"Repeat off"
"Repeat on"
"Search album <name>"[1,2]

"USB"
"Search artist <name>"[1,2]
"Search genre <name>"[1,2]
"Search song <name>"[1,2]
"Search track <name>"[1,2]
"Shuffle off"
"Shuffle on"
"Similar music"
"What's playing?"

[1] <name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song.

[2] This voice command is not available until indexing is complete.

[3] This voice command is only available in folder mode.

Voice command guide	
"Autoplay"	Turn autoplay on to listen to music processed during indexing. Turn autoplay off to allow the indexing process to finish before the system plays any of your music.*
"Search genre" or "Play genre"	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and, if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music that are present in the GENRE metadata tags that you have on your digital media player.
"Similar music"	The system compiles a playlist and then plays music similar to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.

Voice command guide	
"Search" or "Play" artist, track or album	The system searches for specific artist, track or album information from the music indexed through the USB port.
"Refine"	This allows you to make your previous command more specific. For example, if you asked to search and play all music by a certain artist, you could then say, "Refine album" and choose a specific album from the list to view. If you then select Play, the system only plays music from that specific album.

*Indexing times can vary from device to device and with regard to the number of songs the system needs to process.

Press the voice icon. When prompted, say, "Bluetooth audio", then any of the following:

"BLUETOOTH AUDIO"
"Connections"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play next track"
"Play previous track"

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select your media source, how to play your music (such as by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat), and also to add, connect or delete devices.

1. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the media menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

When you select:	You can:
Play Menu	Play your music by artist, album, genre, playlist, track, similar music or play all music. You can also choose to Explore USB to view the supported digital music files on your playing device.
Select Source	Select and play music from your USB port, auxiliary input jack (line in) or stream music from your Bluetooth-enabled phone.
	SYNC USB: Press **OK** to access music plugged into your USB port. You can also plug in devices to charge them (if supported by your device). Once connected, the system indexes any readable media files.[1]

When you select:	You can:
	Bluetooth Audio: This is a phone-dependent feature that allows you to stream music playing on your Bluetooth-enabled phone. If supported by your device, you can press **SEEK** to play the previous or next track.
	SYNC Line In: Press **OK** to select and play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers.[2]
Media Settings	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music and select your Autoplay settings. Once you turn these selections on, they remain on you turn them off. Press **SEEK** to play the previous or next track.[3]
	Shuffle: Press **OK** to shuffle available media files in the current playlist. To shuffle all media tracks, you must select Play All in the play menu and then select Shuffle.
	Repeat: Press **OK** to repeat any song.
	Autoplay: Turn autoplay on to listen to music processed during indexing. Turn autoplay off to allow the indexing process to finish before the system plays any of your music.[4]
Mobile Apps	Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.

When you select:	You can:
System Settings	Access Bluetooth Device menu listings (Add, Connect, Set as Primary, On and Off, Delete) as well as Advanced menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).
Exit Media Menu	Press **OK** to exit the media menu.

[1]The time required to complete this depends on the size of the media the system needs to index. If autoplay is on, you can listen to media processed during indexing. If autoplay is off, you cannot listen to music until the system finishes indexing media. SYNC is capable of indexing thousands of average size media and notifies you if it reaches the maximum indexing file size.

[2]If you have already connected a device to the USB port, you cannot access the line in feature. Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.

[3]Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately

[4]Indexing times can vary from device to device and with regard to the number of songs the system needs to process.

Accessing Your Play Menu

This menu allows you to select and play your media by artist, album, genre, playlist, track, similar music or even to explore what is on your USB device.

Note: *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

1. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the media menu.
2. Scroll to Play. Press **OK**.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Play All	Play all indexed media (tracks) from your playing device in flat file mode, one at a time in numerical order. Press **OK** to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Artists	Sort all indexed media by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then play all artists and tracks alphabetically. If there are fewer than 255 indexed artists, the system lists them alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically.

When you select:	You can:
	1. Press **OK** to select. You can select to play All Artists or any indexed artist. 2. Scroll to choose the desired artist. Press **OK**.
Albums	Sort all indexed media by albums. If there are fewer than 255 indexed albums, the system lists them alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press **OK** to enter the album menu and select from playing all albums or from any individual indexed album. 2. Scroll to choose the desired album. Press **OK**.
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre (category) type. SYNC lists the genres alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre. Press **OK**.
Playlists	Access your playlists (from formats, such as .ASX, .M3U, .WPL or .MTP). The system lists your playlists alphabetically in flat-file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist. Press **OK**.
Tracks	Search for and play a specific indexed track. SYNC lists your tracks alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track. Press **OK**.
Explore USB	Explore all supported digital media on your media device connected to the USB port. You can only view media content which is compatible with SYNC; other files saved are not visible. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to explore indexed media on your flash drive.
Similar Music*	Play music similar to what is currently playing from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each song to compile a playlist for you.

When you select:	You can:
	Press **OK** to select. The system creates a new list of similar songs and begins playing. This feature does not include tracks with incomplete metadata information.
Return	Exit the current menu.

*With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks are not available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in "Mass Storage Device Mode", they are available in voice recognition, play menu browsing and similar music. The system places Unknown items into any unpopulated metadata tag.

System Settings

Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete a device as turn the Bluetooth feature on and off.

1. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the media menu.
2. Scroll to System Settings. Press **OK**.
3. Scroll to Bluetooth Devices. Press **OK**.

When you select:	You can:
Add Bluetooth Device*	Pair more devices to the system. 1. Press **OK** to select and press **OK** again when **Find SYNC** appears in the display. 2. Follow the directions in your phone's manual to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display. 3. When prompted on your phone's six-digit display, enter the PIN.
Connect Bluetooth Device	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled device. 1. Press **OK** to select and view a list of previously paired devices. 2. Scroll until you find the desired device, and then press **OK** to connect the device.
Set Bluetooth	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off.** 1. Press **OK** and scroll to toggle between On and Off. 2. Make a selection, and then press **OK**.
Delete Device	Delete a paired media device. 1. Press **OK** and scroll to select the device. 2. Press **OK** to confirm.
Delete All Devices	Delete all previously paired devices.

When you select:	You can:
	Press **OK** to select.
Return	Exit the current menu.

*This is a speed-dependent feature.

**Setting Bluetooth to off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and turns off all Bluetooth features.

Advanced

The Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults and perform a master reset.

1. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the media menu.
2. Scroll to System Settings. Press **OK**.
3. Scroll to Advanced. Press **OK**.

When you select:	You can:
Prompts	Have SYNC guide you by asking questions, helpful hints or ask you for a specific action. 1. Press **OK** to select and scroll to select between on or off. 2. Press **OK** when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Languages	Choose from English, Français or Español. The displays and prompts are in the selected language. 1. Press **OK** to select and then scroll through the languages. 2. Press **OK** when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
Factory Defaults	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Press **OK** again when **Restore Defaults?** appears in the display. 3. Press **OK** to confirm.

When you select:	You can:
Master Reset	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (all phonebook, call history, text messages and all paired devices) and return to the factory default settings.
Application	Download new software applications (if available) and then load the desired applications through your USB port. See the web site for more information.
Return	Exit the current menu.

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca for more information.

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	· This is a phone-dependent feature. · This may be a possible phone malfunction.	· Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. · Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. · Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. · Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.	This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.	· Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. · If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory. · Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	· This is a phone-dependent feature. · This may be a possible phone malfunction.	· Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. · Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. · Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. · Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. · Update your device's firmware. · Turn off the Auto phonebook download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	· This is a phone-dependent feature. · This may be a possible phone malfunction.	· Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. · Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	· Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again. · Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. · Make sure you insert the USB cable properly into the device and the USB port. · Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	· This is a phone-dependent feature. · The device is not connected.	Make sure you properly connect the device to SYNC and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	· Your music files may not contain the proper artist, song title, album or genre information. · The file may be corrupted. · The song may have copy-right protection, which does not allow it to play.	· Make sure that all song details are populated. · Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.

Vehicle Health Report and Services (Traffic, Directions and Information) issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
I received a text that I did not activate Vehicle Health Report.	· You did not activate your account on the website. · You may have the wrong VIN (vehicle identification number) listed.	· This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it.

Vehicle Health Report and Services (Traffic, Directions and Information) issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		· Make sure that your VIN is correctly listed in your account.
I am unable to retrieve the report on the website, or I receive a system error.	The preferred dealer information did not load correctly.	When you register your account, you must choose a preferred dealer. If it already lists a dealer, try selecting another dealer and logging out. Log back in, change it back to your preferred dealer, and retrieve the report.
I am unable to submit a report.	· This could be due to your phone's compatibility. · Bad signal strength. · You did not activate your phone on the website.	· Update your cellular number in your account on the website. · Make sure you have full signal strength and that your Bluetooth volume level has been turned up. · Try deleting your phone and performing a clean pairing.
I heard a commercial when I tried to use Traffic, Directions and Information.	· You did not activate this phone for this service. · Your phone has ID blocker active.	· This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it. · Turn off ID blocker on your phone as the system recognizes you by your phone number. · Make sure the currently connected phone is the same one that is registered on your SYNCMyRide account.

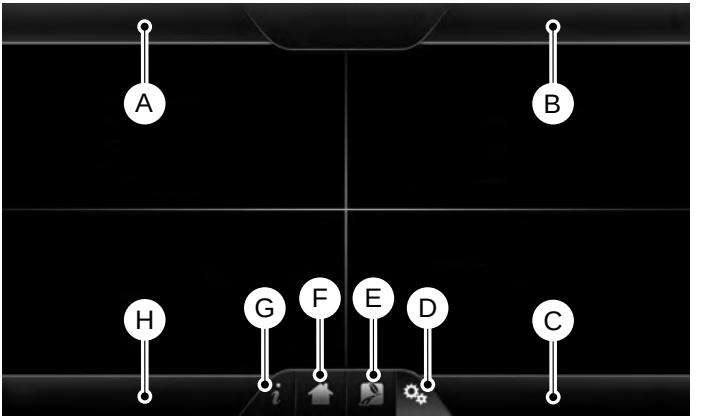
Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	· You may be using the wrong voice commands. · You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	· Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections. · Be aware that SYNC's microphone is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	· You may be using the wrong voice commands. · You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it. · The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	· Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section. · Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. · Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles". · If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A". · Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	· You may be using the wrong voice commands. · You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it. · Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters.	· Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section. · Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	· Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.	· The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe". · Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them. · If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E161890

A Phone
B Navigation (or Information if your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation)
C Climate
D Settings
E EV Information
F Home
G Information
H Entertainment

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

Note: *Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.*

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 30 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

PHONE

Press to select any of the following:

- Phone
- Quick Dial
- Phonebook
- History
- Messaging
- Settings

NAVIGATION

Press to select any of the following:

- My Home
- Favorites
- Previous Destinations
- Point of Interest
- Emergency
- Street Address
- Intersection
- City Center
- Map
- Edit Route Cancel Route

CLIMATE

Press to select any of the following:

- Driver Settings
- Recirculated Air
- Auto
- Dual
- Passenger Settings
- A/C
- Defrost

SETTINGS

Press to select any of the following:

- Clock
- Display
- Sound
- Vehicle
- Settings
- Help

EV Information

Press to access features specific to your hybrid or plug-in hybrid electric vehicle.

HOME

Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.

INFORMATION

Press to select any of the following:

- Services
- Travel Link
- Alerts
- Calendar
- Apps

ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

- AM
- FM
- SIRIUS
- CD
- USB
- BT Stereo
- SD Card
- A/V In

Using the Touch-Sensitive Controls on Your System

To turn a feature on and off, just touch the graphic with your finger. To get the best performance from the touch-sensitive controls:

- Do not press hard on the controls. They are sensitive to light touch.
- Use your bare finger to touch the center of a touch-control graphic. Touching off-center of the graphic may affect operation of a nearby control.
- Make sure your hands are clean and dry.
- Keep metal and other conductive material away from the surface of the touchscreen as this may cause electronic interference (for example, inadvertently turning on a feature other than the one you meant to turn on).

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your bezel:

- Power: Switch the media or climate features off and on.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing media.
- Fan: Control the speed of the climate system fan.
- Seek and Tune buttons: Use as you normally would in media modes.
- Eject: Eject a CD from the entertainment system.
- **SOURCE:** Touch the word repeatedly to see all available media modes. The screen does not change, but you see the media change in the lower left status bar.
- **SOUND:** Touch the word to access the Sound menu where you can adjust settings such as: Bass, Treble, Midrange, Balance and Fade, DSP (Digital Signal Processing), Occupancy Mode and Speed Compensated Volume. (Your vehicle may not have all of these sound options.)
- Hazard flasher: Switch the hazard flashers off and on.

Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a clean, soft cloth such as one used for cleaning glasses. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call: 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SIRIUS Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone
	Adding phonebook contacts or uploading phonebook contacts (from a USB)
	List entries are limited for phone contacts and recent phone call entries
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code
	Enabling Valet Mode

Restricted features	
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active
Wi-Fi and Wireless	Editing wireless settings
	Editing the list of wireless networks
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Playing video
	Editing the screen's wallpaper or adding new wallpaper
Text Messages	Composing text messages
	Viewing received text messages
	Editing preset text messages
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination
	Demo navigation route
	Adding or editing Address Book entries or Avoid Areas

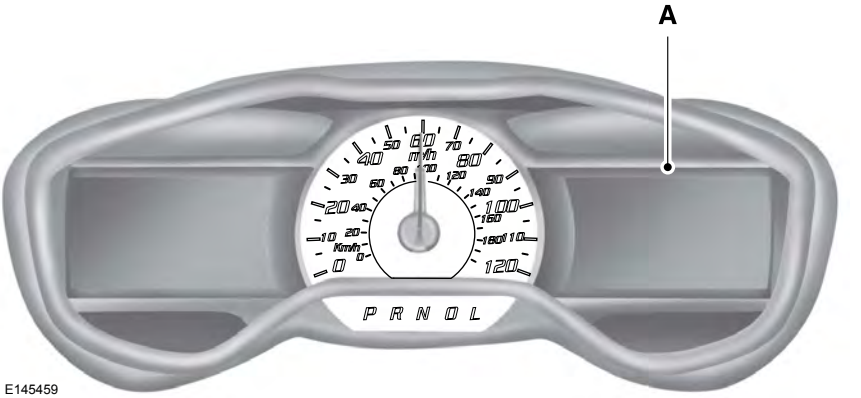
Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report, and Traffic, Directions and Information.

Accessing and Adjusting Modes Through Your Right Vehicle Information Display



E145459

The display is located on the right side of your instrument cluster (A). You can use your steering wheel controls to view and make minor adjustments to active modes without taking your hands off the wheel. For example:

- In Entertainment mode, you can view what is now playing, change the audio source, select memory presets and make some adjustments.
- In Phone mode, you can accept or reject an incoming call.
- If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, you can view the current route or activate a route.
- In Efficiency Leaves mode, you can learn how your vehicle informs you of your driving efficiency. Press **OK** to exit the menu.

E130248

Use the **OK** and arrow buttons on the right side of your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes:

The selection menu expands and different options appear.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode.

- Press the left or right arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, Compass appears in the display instead of Navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the Compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not true direction (for example, if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west though its true direction is to the right of west).*

Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice session (such as Listening, Success, Failed, Paused or Try Again).

How to Use Voice Commands with Your System

Press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

These commands can be said at any time during a voice session
"Cancel"
"Exit"
"Go back"
"List of commands"
"Main menu"
"Next page"
"Previous page"
"What can I say?"
"Help"

What Can I Say?

To access the available voice commands for the current session, do one of the following:

- During a voice session, press the Help icon (**?**) in the lower left status bar of the screen.
- Say, "What can I say?" for an on-screen listing of the possible voice commands associated with your current voice session.
- Press the voice icon. After the tone, say, "Help" to hear a list of possible voice commands.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.

- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

Accessing a List of Available Commands

- If you use the touchscreen, press the Settings icon > **Help** > **Voice Command List**.
- If you use the steering wheel control, press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

Available voice commands
"Audio list of commands"
"Bluetooth audio list of commands"
"Browse list of commands"
"CD list of commands"
"Climate control list of commands"
"List of commands"
"Navigation list of commands" *
"Phone list of commands"
"Radio list of commands"
"SD card list of commands"
"Sirius satellite list of commands" **
"Travel link list of commands" *
"USB list of commands"
"Voice instructions list of commands"
"Voice settings list of commands"
"Help"

* This command is only available when your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, and the navigation system SD card is in the card slot.

** This command is only available when you have an active SIRIUS satellite radio subscription.

Voice Settings

Voice settings allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

- **Interaction Mode:** Novice mode provides detailed interaction and guidance while the advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
- **Confirmation Prompts:** The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice request. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm settings.
- **Phone and Media Candidate Lists:** Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.

To access these settings using the touchscreen:

1. Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Voice Control**.
2. Select from:

- Interaction Mode
- Confirmation Prompts
- Media Candidate Lists
- Phone Candidate Lists
- Voice Control Volume.

To access these settings using voice commands:

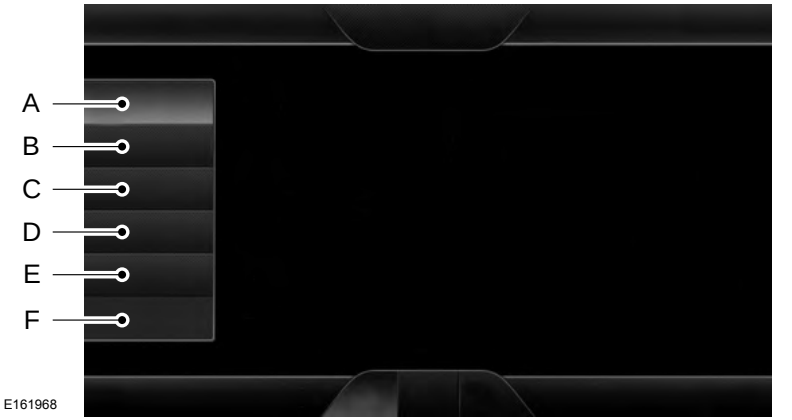
1. Press the voice icon. Wait for the prompt "Please say a command". Another tone sounds to let you know the system is listening.
2. Say any of the following commands:

Voice settings using voice commands
"Confirmation prompts off"
"Confirmation prompts on"
"Interaction mode advanced"
"Interaction mode novice"
"Media candidate lists off"
"Media candidate lists on"
"Phone candidate lists off"
"Phone candidate lists on"
"Help"

Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options

Your voice system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice session. For example, when entering in a street address or trying to call a contact from the phone you paired to the system.

SETTINGS



A Clock
B Display
C Sound
D Vehicle
E Settings
F Help

Under this menu, you can set your clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

Clock

Note: *You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.*

Note: *If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.*

1. Press the Settings icon > **Clock**.
2. Press **+** and **-** to adjust the time.

From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones.

You can also turn the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Display

You can adjust the touchscreen display through the touchscreen or by pressing the voice button on your steering wheel controls and when prompted, say, "Display settings".

Press the Settings icon > **Display**, to access and make adjustments using the touchscreen.

- **Brightness** allows you to make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
- **Auto DIM**, when set to **On**, lets you use the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature. When set to **Off**, screen brightness does not change.
- **Mode** allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level, or turn the display off.
  - If you select **AUTO** or **NIGHT**, you have the options of turning the display's Auto Dim feature on or off and changing the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature.

- **Auto Dim Manual Offset** allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night. This feature also allows you to adjust screen brightness using the instrument panel dimming control.
- **Edit Wallpaper**
  - You can have your touchscreen display the default photo or upload your own.

Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

Note: *You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.*

Note: *Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.*

Your system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.

To access, press the Settings icon > **Display** > **Edit Wallpaper**, and then follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

Only the photograph(s), which meets the following conditions, display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: .jpg, .gif, .png, .bmp
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384

Sound

Press the Settings icon > **Sound**, then select from the following:

Sound settings
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP*
Occupancy Mode*
Speed Compensated Volume

* Your vehicle may not have this sound setting.

Vehicle

Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle**, then select from the following:

- Vehicle Health Report
- Rear View Camera
- Enable Valet Mode
- Charge Port Light Ring.

Vehicle Health Report

Turn **Automatic Reminders** on and off and set the mileage interval at which you would like to receive the reports. Press **?** for more information on these selections.

When done making your selections, press **Run Vehicle Health Report Now** if you want your report.

You can find more information on Vehicle Health Report in this chapter. See **Information** (page 375).

Rear View Camera

This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Rear View Camera**, then select from the following settings:

- Rear Camera Delay
- Visual Park Aid Alert
- Guidelines.

You can find more information on the rear view camera in another chapter. See **Rear View Camera** (page 168).

Enable Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN. You can create your own four-digit PIN to lock and unlock the system.

1. Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Enable Valet Mode**.
2. When prompted, enter a four-digit PIN.

After you press **Continue**, the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, enter 3681 and the system unlocks.*

Charge Point Light Ring

Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Charge Point Light Ring**, then select from the following:

Charge point light ring	
On	Illuminates when plugging in, opening doors, pressing the unlock button on your remote, and while charging.
Off	Does not illuminate.
Limited	**Cord Acknowledgement:** Illuminates when plugging in.
	Charge Status: Illuminates when opening doors or pressing the unlock button on your remote.

Note: *Details on the charge port light ring functions are in another chapter.* *See **High Voltage Battery** (page 146).*

Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

System

Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **System**, then select from the following:

System	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Touch Panel Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm button choices made through the climate or audio system.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Voice Control

Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Voice Control**, then select from the following:

Voice control	
Interaction Mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request.*
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.

Voice control	
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Voice Control Volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.

* Even with confirmation prompts turned off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings

Media Player

Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Media Player**, then select from the following:

Media player	
Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.
Index Bluetooth Audio Devices	When this feature is on, the system automatically indexes media on your connected Bluetooth device.
Gracenote Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote Mgmt	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplied cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

Navigation

Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Navigation**, then select from the following:

Navigation	
Map Preferences	Turn breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Turn the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route Preferences	Choose to have the system display the Shortest, Fastest or most Ecological route first. If you set **Always Use Preferred Route** to **Yes**, the system uses the selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination. **Always Use Preferred Route** bypasses route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on the preferred route setting. **Eco Time Penalty** allows you to select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid tollroads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.
	Have the system use HOV (high-occupancy vehicle) lanes.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill-in State/Province information.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system display areas where roadwork occurs.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog alerts.
	Have the system display weather warnings.

Navigation	
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system turn on your radio for traffic announcements.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

Phone

Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Phone**, then select from the following:

Phone	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Turn Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
911 Assist	Turn on or turn off the 911 Assist feature. See **Information** (page 375).
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press **?** for more information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

Wireless & Internet

Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or play games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also gain access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking and if you park outside a wireless hotspot.

Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Wireless & Internet**, then select from the following:

Wi-fi	
Wi-Fi Settings	**Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode** turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you turn it on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a Wireless Network allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (Access Point) Mode makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when turned on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things, such as game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press **?** for more information.
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Device List allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.

Wi-fi	
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must turn on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following: Country, Carrier, Phone Number, User Name and Password.
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritize Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to Change Order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.

E142626

CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

The Wi-Fi

Help

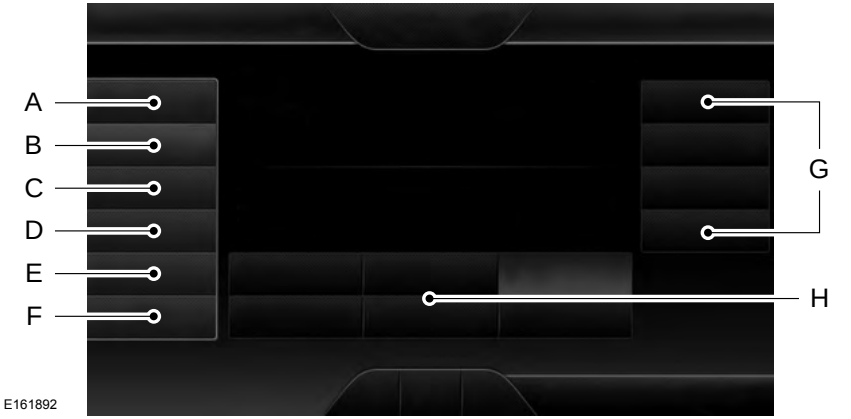
Press the Settings icon > **Help**, then select from the following:

Help	
Where Am I?	View your vehicle's current location, if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you do not see this button.
System Information	Touchscreen system serial number
	Your vehicle identification number (VIN)
	Touchscreen system software version
	Navigation system version
	Map database version

Help	
	Sirius satellite radio ESN
	Gracenote Database Information and Library version
Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.
911 Assist	Turn on and turn off the 911 Assist feature. See **Information** (page 375).
	In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial: allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. Select **Edit** to access your phonebook and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons. The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the 911 Assist call process.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.

To access Help using the voice commands, press the voice button, then, after the tone, say "Help". The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

ENTERTAINMENT



A	AM 1 and AM AST
B	FM 1, FM 2 and FM AST
C	SIRIUS
D	CD
E	USB
F	Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card, BT Stereo and A/V In
G	These buttons change with the media mode you are in.
H	Radio memory presets and CD controls.

Note: *Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.*

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Browsing Device Content

When listening to audio on a device, you can browse through other devices without having to change sources. For example, if you are currently listening to audio on an SD card, you can browse all the artists that are stored on your USB device.

Press the voice icon on the steering wheel. When prompted, you can say:

"BROWSE" within devices
"Browse"*
"Browse <league> games"**
"Browse <Sirius category> channels"**
"Browse SD card"
"Browse Sirius channel guide"**
"Browse USB"
"Help"

* If you only say, "Browse", you can then say any commands in the following chart.

**This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to SIRIUS satellite radio.

"BROWSE"
"<League> Games"*
"<Sirius category> channels"*
"SD card"**
"Sirius Channel Guide"*
"USB"**
"Help"

* This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to SIRIUS satellite radio.

** For more commands in SD card or USB mode, see the "SD Card and USB Port" section of this chapter.

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command. For example, if you are listening to music on a USB device, then want to switch to a satellite radio channel, simply press the voice button on the steering wheel controls and say the name of the SIRIUS station (such as, "the Highway"). The following voice commands are available at the top level of the voice session no matter which current audio source you are listening to (such as a USB device or SIRIUS satellite radio).

Note: *This is only available when your MyFord Touch system language is set to North American English.*

Sample commands
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<530-1710>"
"<Channel name>"*
"AM <530-1710>"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"Play [album] <name>"**
"Play [artist] <name>"**
"Play [genre] <name>"**
"Play [playlist] <name>"**
"Play [song] <name>"**
"Play <name>"
"Play <name (song or album)> by <artist name>"

Sample commands
"Sirius <0-223>"*
"Sports games"*

* This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to SIRIUS satellite radio.

** The commands that have [ ] around the word means that the word is optional. For example, if you say, "Play Metallica", this is the same as the voice command, "Play [artist] <name>".

AM/FM Radio

Touch the **AM** or **FM** tab to listen to the radio.

To change between AM and FM presets, just touch the **AM** or **FM** tab.

Memory Presets

Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.

HD Radio

Touch this button to turn HD Radio on. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on. HD Radio allows you to receive radio broadcasts digitally, where available, providing free, crystal-clear sound. See HD Radio information later in this chapter.

Scan

Touch this button to go to the next strong AM or FM radio station. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on.

Options

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Set PTY for Seek/Scan

This allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for. You can then choose to either seek or scan for the stations playing that category.

RDS Text Display

This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.

AST

AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.

TAG Button

This feature is available when HD Radio is on, and allows you to tag a song to download later. When you select On, **TAG** appears on-screen when HD Radio is active. You can touch **TAG** to save the information of the song that is playing. When you plug in your portable music player, the information transfers, if supported by your device. When you are connected to iTunes, the tags appear to remind you of the songs you would like to download. See HD Radio information later in this chapter.

Direct Tune

Touch this button to manually enter the desired station number. Touch **Enter** when you are done.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:

E142616

The HD Radio logo blinks when acquiring a digital station and stays solid when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

TAG allows you to save a song to download later when you are on an acquired HD Radio station and the feature is on. To turn the feature on and use it:

1. Press **AM** or **FM** > **Options** > **TAG Button** > **On**.
2. When you hear a song you like, touch **TAG**.
3. The system automatically saves the song's information and transfers it to your portable music player (if supported) when you connect it to the system. The system automatically transfers the tag to your player (if already connected) and a pop-up confirms the transfer.
4. When you access iTunes with your portable music player, the tags appear to you as a reminder. The system allows you to tag up to approximately 100 songs. For a list of devices that support tagging, see www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Increase or decrease in audio volume.		
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or **Direct Tune**.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when **Scan** is pressed.	Pressing **Scan** disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

* http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

Radio Voice Commands

If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Radio", then any of the following commands.

"RADIO"
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<87.9-107.9> HD"[1]
"<530-1710>"
"AM"
"AM <530-1710>"
"AM autoset"
"AM autoset preset <#>"
"AM preset <#>"
"Browse"[2]
"FM"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>"[1]
"FM autoset"
"FM autoset preset <#>"
"FM preset <#>"
"FM 1"
"FM 1 preset <#>"
"FM 2"
"FM 2 preset <#>"
"HD <#>"[1]
"Preset <#>"
"Radio off"
"Radio on"

"RADIO"
"Set PTY"
"Tune"[3]
"Help"

[1] If available.

[2] If you have said "Browse", see the "Browse" chart later in this section.

[3] If you have said "Tune", see the following "Tune" chart.

"TUNE"
"<530-1710>"
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<87.9-107.9> HD <#>"*
"AM"
"AM <530-1710>"
"AM autoset"
"AM autoset preset <#>"
"AM preset <#>"
"FM"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>"*
"FM autoset"
"FM autoset preset <#>"
"FM preset <#>"
"FM 1"
"FM 1 preset <#>"
"FM 2"
"FM 2 preset <#>"

"TUNE"
"HD <#>"*
"Preset <#>"
"Help"

* If available.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select the **SIRIUS** tab.

Memory Presets

Save a channel by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the channel. Sound returns when finished.

ALERT

Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel.

Replay

Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you have remained tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.

While in replay mode:

- Press and release the seek buttons to hear the previous or next song.
- Press and hold the seek buttons to reverse or fast forward in the current track.
- Press play or pause to play or pause the audio.
- Press **Replay** to return to live audio if you have been using the feature to replay audio.

Scan

Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of channels.

Options

Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Set Category for Seek/Scan

This allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for. You can then choose to either seek or scan for the stations playing that category.

Parental Lockout

This allows you to lock and unlock channels, change or reset your PIN or unlock all channels. To use this feature, you need your initial PIN, which is 1234.

Artist/Title/Team Alerts

This feature allows you to select Artists, Titles and Teams that you would like the system to alert you to when they are playing on other channels. Press Edit Alerts to delete or turn off alerts. You can also set all alerts to on or off. When an alert appears on the screen, you can choose to

Tune to the channel, to Cancel the alert or to Disable Alerts. If you are listening to a sporting event, you can save your favorite teams so that the system can alert you when they are playing on a satellite radio channel.

Note: *SIRIUS does not support the Alert feature on all channels. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for Alert feature variation.*

Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. The ESN is on the System Information Screen (SR ESN:XXXXXXXXXXXX). To access your ESN, touch the bottom left corner of the touchscreen. Touch **SIRIUS** > **Options**.

Direct Tune

Touch this button to manually enter the desired satellite channel number. Touch **Enter** when you are done.

Browse

Touch this button to view a list of all available stations. Scroll to see more categories. Touch the station you want to listen to.

Touch **Skip** if you want to skip this channel.

Touch **Lock** if you do not want anyone to listen to this channel.

Touch **Title** or **Artist** to see song and artists on other stations.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio Information

Note: *SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*

E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.sirius.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

SIRIUS Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

Troubleshooting tips		
Radio display	**Cause**	**Action**
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/SIRIUS System Failure.	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel.	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel.	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal.	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.

Troubleshooting tips		
Radio display	**Cause**	**Action**
Updating.	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Call SIRIUS 1-888-539-7474.	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check Channel Guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated.	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio Voice Commands

If you are listening to SIRIUS satellite radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to SIRIUS satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "SIRIUS", then any of the following commands.

"SIRIUS"
"<Channel name>"
"Preset <#>"
"SAT"
"SAT preset <#>"
"SAT 1"
"SAT 1 Preset <#>"
"SAT 2"

"SIRIUS"
"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"SAT 3"
"SAT 3 preset <#>"
"Sirius <0-223>"
"Sirius off"
"Sirius on"
"Sports game"*
"Tune"**
"Help"

* If you have said "Sports game", see the following "Sports game" chart.

** If you have said "Tune", see the following "Tune" chart.

"SPORTS GAME"
"Tune to the <college name> game"
"Tune to the <team city> game"
"Tune to the <team city> <team name> game"
"Tune to the <team name> game"
"Help"

"TUNE"
"<Channel Name>"
"Preset <#>"
"SAT"
"SAT 1"
"SAT 1 preset <#>"
"SAT 2"
"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"SAT 3"
"SAT 3 preset <#>"
"Sirius <0-223>"
"Help"

CD

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select the **CD** tab.

You can also advance and reverse the current track or current folder, if applicable.

Repeat

Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or turn the feature off if already on.

Shuffle

Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or turn the feature off if already on.

Scan

Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.

More Info

Touch this button to see disc information.

Options

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Compression

Touch this button to turn the compression feature on and off.

Browse

Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

CD Voice Commands

If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "CD", then any of the following commands.

"CD"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play next track"
"Play previous track"
"Play track <1-512>"
"Repeat"
"Repeat folder"*
"Repeat off"
"Repeat track"
"Shuffle"
"Shuffle CD"*
"Shuffle folder"*
"Shuffle off"
"Help"

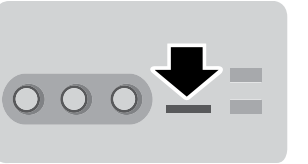
*This applies to WMA or MP3 files only.

SD Card Slot and USB Port

SD Card

Note: *Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.*

Note: *The navigation system also uses this card slot. See* ***Navigation*** *(page 387).*



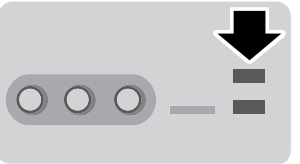
E142619

The SD card slot is located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **SD Card** from the list on the left side of the screen.

E142620

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

USB Port



E142621

The USB ports are located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

Playing Music from Your Device

Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.*

Insert your device and select the **SD Card** or **USB** tab once the system recognizes it. You can then select from the following options:

Repeat

This feature replays the currently playing song or album.

Shuffle

Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.

Similar Music

This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.

More Info

Touch this button to see disc information such as current track, artist name, album and genre.

Options

Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound Settings allows you to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Media Player Settings allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See **Settings** (page 330).

Device Information displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.

Update Media Index indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (such as adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, such as genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information such as Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

You can also touch **What's Playing** to hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

Playing Video from Your Device

To access and play video from your device, your vehicle's transmission must be in position **P** with the ignition in accessory mode. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 124).

SD Card and USB Voice Commands

If you are listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "USB" or "SD card", then any of the following commands.

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Browse"*
"Next"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play album <name>"
"Play all"

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Play artist <name>"
"Play audiobook <name>"
"Play author <name>"
"Play composer <name>"
"Play folder <name>"
"Play genre <name>"
"Play movie <name>"**
"Play music video <name>"**
"Play playlist <name>"
"Play podcast <name>"
"Play podcast episode <name>"
"Play similar music"
"Play song <name>"
"Play TV show <name>"**
"Play TV show episode <name>"**
"Play video <name>"**
"Play video podcast <name>"**
"Play video podcast episode <name>"**
"Play video playlist <name>"**
"Previous"
"Repeat all"
"Repeat off"
"Repeat one"
"Shuffle"
"Shuffle album"

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Shuffle off"
"What's this?"
"Help"

* If you have said you would like to browse your USB or SD card, the system prompts you to specify what you would like to browse. When prompted, see the following "Browse" chart.

** These commands are only available in USB mode and are device-dependent.

"BROWSE"
"Album <name>"
"All albums"
"All artists"
"All audiobooks"
"All authors"
"All composers"
"All folders"
"All genres"
"All movies"*
"All music videos"*
"All playlists"
"All podcasts"
"All songs"
"All TV shows"*
"All video playlists"*
"All video podcasts"*

"BROWSE"
"All videos"*
"Artist <name>"
"Audiobook <name>"
"Author <name>"
"Composer <name>"
"Folder <name>"
"Genre <name>"
"Playlist <name>"
"Podcast <name>"
"TV show <name>"*
"Video <name>"*
"Video playlist <name>"*
"Video podcast <name>"*
"Help"

* This command is only available in USB mode and is device-dependent.

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as **Unknown**.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

Bluetooth Audio

Your system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.

To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select the **BT Stereo** tab.

Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands

If you are listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say "Next song", "Pause", "Play" or "Previous song".

If you are not listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Next song", "Pause", "Play" or "Previous song".

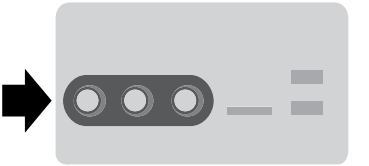
A/V Inputs

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



E142622

Your A/V inputs allow you to connect an auxiliary audio/video source (such as a gaming systems or a personal camcorder) by connecting RCA cords (not included) to these input jacks. The jacks are yellow, red and white and are located either behind a small access door on the instrument panel or in your center console.

You can also use the A/V inputs as an auxiliary input jack to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. Plug in your 1/8 inch (3.5 millimeter) RCA adapter into the two left A/V input jacks (red and white).

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **A/V In**.

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed for use with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at one end and a RCA jack at the other.

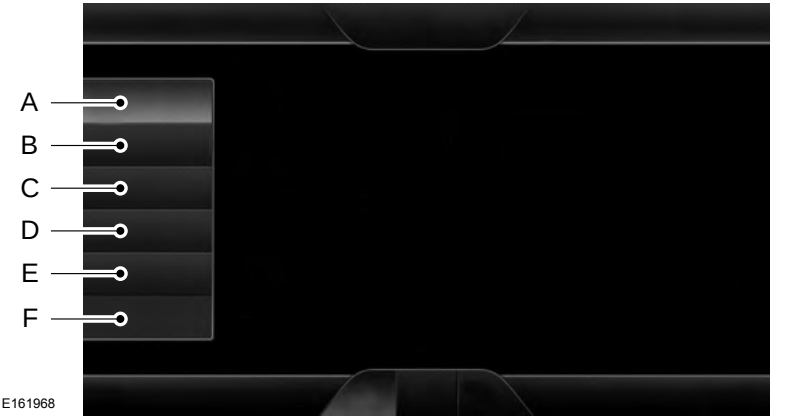
1. Switch off the vehicle, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adapter in one of the two left A/V input jacks (white or red) inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD (if there is a CD already loaded into the system).
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to ½ the maximum.
6. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select the **A/V In** tab. (You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.)
7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the controls.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

Troubleshooting

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The jack only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.
- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problem persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable media player.
- Control the portable media player in the same manner when used with headphones, as the auxiliary input jack does not provide control (such as Play or Pause) over the attached portable media player.

PHONE



A	Phone
B	Quick Dial
C	Phonebook
D	History
E	Messaging
F	Settings

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call
- Ending a call
- Using privacy mode
- Dialing a number
- Redialing
- Call waiting notification
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing Your Phone for the First Time

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your phone in a hands-free manner.

Note: *Put the transmission in position **P**. Turn on your vehicle ignition and the radio.*

1. Touch **Add Phone** in the upper left corner of the touchscreen. **Find SYNC** appears on the screen, and instructs you to begin the pairing process from your device.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your phone's manual if necessary.

Note: *Select **SYNC**, and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.*

3. If prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.
4. When prompted on your phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cellular phone.
5. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more phone options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your phone's manual and visit the website.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: *Put the transmission in position **P**. Turn on your vehicle ignition and the radio.*

1. Press the **Phone** corner of the touchscreen > **Settings** > **BT Devices** > **Add Device**.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your phone's manual if necessary.

Note: *Select **SYNC**, and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.*

3. If prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.
4. When prompted on your phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cellular phone.
5. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more phone options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your phone's manual and visit the website.

Making Calls

Press the voice button on your steering wheel controls. When prompted, say, "Call <name>" or say "Dial", then the desired number.

To end the call or exit phone mode, press this phone button.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.

Accept the call by pressing **Accept** on the touchscreen or by pressing this phone button on your steering wheel controls.

Reject the call by pressing **Reject** on the touchscreen or by pressing this phone button on your steering wheel controls.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on your touchscreen to select from the following options:

Phone

Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose to:

- Mute the call
- Put the call on hold
- Turn on the privacy feature
- Join two calls
- End the call.

Quick Dial

Set up favorite contacts from you phonebook or history folder.

Phonebook

Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phone book. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen.

To turn on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, press **Phone** > **Settings** > **Manage Phonebook** > **Download photos from Phonebook** > **On**.

History

After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to your Favorites or to Quick Dial.

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.*

Messaging

Send text messages using your touchscreen. See **Text messaging** later in this section.

Settings

Touch this button to access various phone settings, such turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See **Phone settings** later in this section.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Note: *SYNC does not download read text messages from your phone.*

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, such as LOL.

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.

2. Select **Messaging**.
3. Choose from the following:
- Listen (speaker icon)
- Dial
- Send Text
- View
- Delete.

Composing a Text Message

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.*

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.
2. Touch **Messaging** > **Send Text**.
3. Enter a phone number or choose from your phonebook.
4. You can select from the following options:
- **Send**, which sends the message as it is.
- **Edit Text**, which allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list.

Text message options
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *If you select **View** and your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h), the system offers to read the message to you instead of allowing you to view it while driving.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your phone. You can press:

- **View** to view the text message.
- **Listen** for SYNC to read the message to you.
- **Dial** to call the contact.
- **Ignore** to exit the screen.

Phone Settings

Press **Phone** > **Settings**.

Bluetooth Devices

Touch this tab to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.

Bluetooth

Touch this tab to turn Bluetooth off or on.

Do Not Disturb

Touch this tab if you want all calls to go directly to your voice mail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.

911 Assist

Turn on or turn off the 911 Assist feature. See **Information** (page 375).

Phone Ringer

Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.

Text Message Notification

Select a text message notification, if supported by your phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.

Internet Data Connection

If your phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press **?** for more information.

Manage Phonebook

Touch this button to access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.

Roaming Warning

Touch this button to have the system alert you when your phone is in roaming mode.

Phone Voice Commands

Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"PHONE"
"Call"
"Call <name>"
"Call <name> at home"
"Call <name> at work"
"Call <name> on cell"
"Call <name> on other"
"Call voicemail"
"Dial"
"Do not disturb off"
"Do not disturb on"
"Forward text messages"
"Go to hands free"*
"Hold call off"*
"Hold on"*
"Join calls"*
"Listen to text message <#>"
"Listen to text messages"
"Messages"**
"Mute call"*

"PHONE"
"Pair phone"
"Privacy on"*
"Read text message"
"Reply to text messages"
"Turn ringer off"
"Turn ringer on"
"Unmute call"*
"Help"

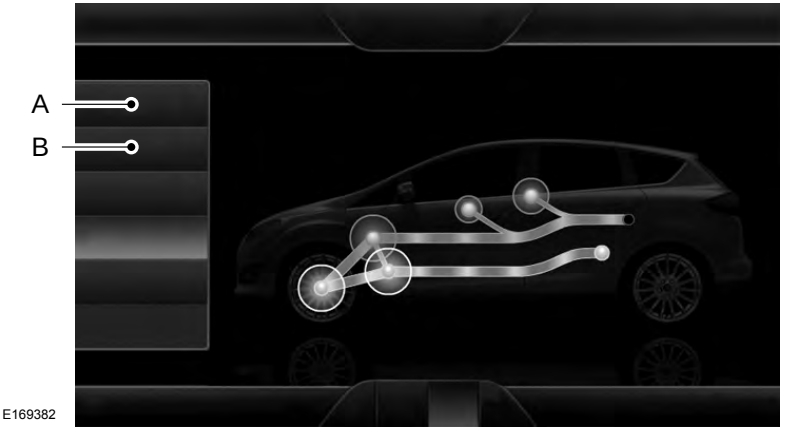
* This command is only available during an active call.

** If you say "Messages", see the following "Messages" chart for additional commands.

"MESSAGES"
"Call"
"Forward text messages"
"Listen to text message <#>"
"Listen to text messages"
"Reply to text messages"
"Help"

ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION

Your system has special electric vehicle screens, which display power flow and charge settings. To access these screens, press the EV Info button.



A Settings

B Power

Settings (Energi Only)

This screen allows you to set up the charging convenience features.

MyFord Mobile

You can also set up the charging convenience features using MyFord Mobile over the internet or smartphone application. For more information on MyFord Mobile, and to set up your MyFord Mobile account, visit www.myfordmobile.com.

Privacy Notice and GPS Mapping with MyFord Mobile in the US and Canada

MyFord Mobile allows for GPS mapping when you register your vehicle to a MyFord Mobile account. To remove your vehicle from the account, thereby removing GPS mapping ability, you can perform a Master Reset in your vehicle. See **Settings** (page 330).

Prior to transferring ownership of your vehicle, owners may choose to execute a Master Reset or Factory Reset (completed via the MyFord Mobile website). Either method will remove your vehicle from all MyFord Mobile accounts.

We recommend you perform a Master Reset upon taking possession of your vehicle to remove it from any existing MyFord Mobile accounts. The new owner can activate a MyFord Mobile account by going to www.myfordmobile.com and following the registration process.

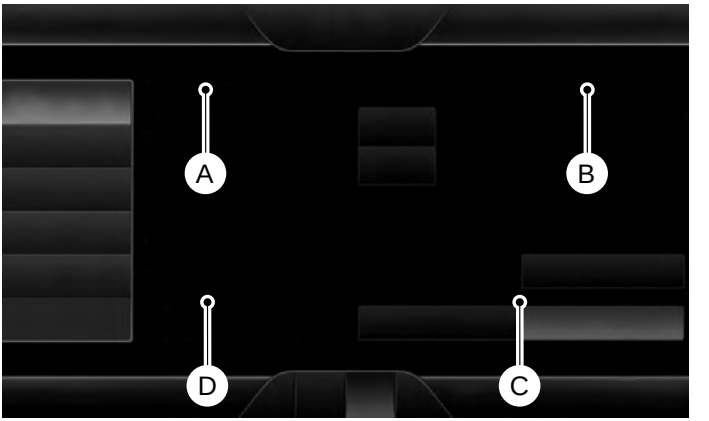
Convenience Features

To improve the charging experience, your vehicle has the following convenience features:

- **Value Charge:** Your vehicle schedules its charging time for when the utility rates are lowest. Contact your utility company to see what rates are available.
- **Charge Now:** Your vehicle starts charging immediately after you connect the charging plug.
- **GO Time:** Setting GO Times allows you to control charging schedules and cabin conditioning settings so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a GO Time, your vehicle can use your value charge settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize getting a full charge before your GO Time. A calendar view allows you to program two GO Times per day for each day of the week.

Note: *Remember, you must plug in your vehicle for My GO Time to work.*

- **Cabin Conditioning:** Get the most miles out of every charge by conditioning your vehicle while it is plugged in. Set the cabin temperature when you set your GO Time in order to use energy from your home (or charging station) instead of from your vehicle's battery.



E161966

A **My GO Time summary** displays the next GO Time and cabin temperature setting.

B **Estimated charge time limits** displays the estimated minimum and maximum times to fully charge the high-voltage battery and the battery's present state of charge as a percentage of total capacity.

C **Charge profile and mode** displays the charging profile and charging mode for the vehicle's present location.

D **Charging status and actual times** displays charging status with the charging start time, end time, and duration.

My GO Time Summary

GO Time

This is the time and date of your next set drive time. Your vehicle automatically schedules charging and cabin conditioning to finish by this time.

Temperature

This is the chosen cabin conditioning setting for this GO Time.

Skip

This cancels the cabin conditioning for the present GO Time. Once you touch Skip, the GO Time and Temperature grey out, and the LED illuminates on the Skip button. Touch the button again to turn on the cabin conditioning. This feature allows you to ignore the present GO Time without having to delete it or having to turn off the entire schedule (see **GO Time Schedule** later in this section). After the present GO Time passes, the Skip feature resets.

Edit

This accesses your GO Time Schedule (see **GO Time Schedule** later in this section).

The system also alerts you to any conflicts by highlighting areas of the screen in yellow. If your battery cannot have a full charge by the scheduled drive time, the system highlights your next GO Time and Charge Complete time and a message **Charge at GO Time: under 100%** appears. This is normal; the vehicle is informing you of the conflicting situation. This notification only displays when the gearshift selector lever is in position **P**.

Note: *Charging occurs as soon as you plug the vehicle in. The system limits cabin conditioning to 15 minutes before your GO Time.*

To eliminate the conflict notification immediately or to prevent a conflict in the future, try the following:

- Change the present GO Time to occur later.
- Plug the vehicle into a 240V charging station instead of the 120V convenience cord. Higher power charging yields shorter charge times.
- Plug the vehicle in sooner.

Estimated Charge Time Limits

Battery

This shows you the battery's current charge displayed as a percentage. A reading of 100% means the battery has a full charge. A reading of 0% indicates the battery has no plug-in energy left.

To fully charge

240V is the estimated minimum charging time from the present high-voltage battery level to full charge (100%). This represents the shortest amount of time you should expect the high-voltage battery to recharge under ideal conditions. Ideal conditions include a 240V charging station and a minimum 30A service and high-voltage battery at a moderate temperature.

Note: *This charging time is only an estimate. It is normal for your actual charge duration to be longer.*

Note: *Some charging stations use lower voltage (208V), which result in longer charge times.*

120V is the estimated maximum charging time from the present high-voltage battery level to full charge (100%). This represents the longest amount of time you should expect the high-voltage battery to recharge under normal conditions. Normal conditions include a 120V convenience cord and 12A service.

Note: *This charging time is only an estimate. It is possible for your actual charge duration to be longer. This occurs when the AC line voltage is low and may indicate your electrical source is not meeting certain requirements. See* ***Charging the High Voltage Battery*** *(page 148).*

Value Charge Profile and Mode

Value Charge Profile Name

This is the name of the presently detected Value Charge Profile. The system detects a customer defined value charge profile when the vehicle is within approximately 300 feet (100 meters) of the GPS location registered for the profile. If the vehicle is close to more than one charge profile, it chooses the closest. When the vehicle is not at a defined profile, it uses the **Default Value** charge profile. The system normally displays **Default Profile** while you are driving because the vehicle is typically between defined value charge profiles.

Edit

Touch this button to access your Value Charge profiles settings screen (see **Value Charge Profiles** later in this section).

Charge Now

Touch this button if you want your vehicle to immediately charge when plugged in at this profile location. This button illuminates when Charge Now is the charge mode selected for the presently detected charge profile.

Value Charge

Touch this button if you want to take advantage of off-peak electricity rates. The vehicle optimizes the charge schedule to be complete by the next GO Time. This button illuminates when Value Charge is the charge mode selected for the presently detected charge profile.

Charging Status and Actual Times

This is the status of the charging system, which includes the charging plug, high-voltage battery and charger.

Next Charge

This means the vehicle is unplugged. Charge Start and Complete information is for the present vehicle location.

Waiting to Charge

This means you plugged the vehicle in and it is ready to charge. Typical of Value Charge mode, the vehicle may not start charging right away because it is set to charge at times with lower utility costs.

Charging

This means the high-voltage battery is charging.

Charged

This informs you that the high-voltage battery is fully charged and not currently scheduled for further charging.

Charge Fault

This alerts you that a fault is present and is preventing the high-voltage battery from charging. Inspect the charge plug connection, charge cord and charging station.

Start

This is the scheduled start time of charging.

- **At Plug In:** When the vehicle is in Charge Now mode, and unplugged, the message At Plug In appears, indicating the vehicle immediately starts charging once you plug it in. Once you plug it in, the system shows the actual charge start time.
- **Scheduled Charge Start Time:** When the vehicle is in Value Charge mode, the system displays the scheduled charge start time (for example, 8:00 PM). Once charging starts, the system continues to display the actual charge start time.

Complete

This is the estimated time of charge completion.

- **Charge Now Duration:** When the vehicle is in Charge Now mode, and unplugged, the system displays the charging duration in hours. Once you plug in the vehicle, the value shows the estimated time to finish charging.
- **Scheduled Charge Complete Time:** When the vehicle is in Value Charge mode, the system displays the estimated charge complete time. It is normal for the estimated complete time to change while charging. The vehicle keeps charging until the high-voltage battery is fully charged.

GO Time Schedule

Touch the **Edit** button in the My GO Time section of the Settings screen to see the GO Time Schedule.

On

This turns on the GO Time schedule.

Off

This turns off the GO Time schedule. This also turns off the cabin conditioning function. Use this mode to prevent using energy for cabin preconditioning when you leave your vehicle plugged in and don't plan to use it for a while, such as when on vacation.

Note: *If you choose to perform Value Charging with the schedule off, the vehicle schedules charging to finish at the lowest cost within 24 hours of plugging the vehicle in.*

GO Time 1 and GO Time 2

This displays the GO Time day-of-week and time. The blue highlighted GO Time is the present GO Time which the vehicle is using for charge scheduling and cabin conditioning. You can schedule two GO Time events per day for each day of the week.

- **GO Time** allows you to edit the GO Time and cabin conditioning temperature.
- **--:--** indicates that you can add a GO Time to this slot.

Note: *If you set GO Time 2 to occur before GO Time 1, a message pops up alerting you. You need to go back to the previous screen and change the times so GO Time 1 occurs before GO Time 2.*

GO Time and Cabin Conditioning

This screen allows you to enter or change the GO Time and cabin conditioning temperature.

Time (+ and -)

These change the hours and minutes of your GO Time. The minutes change in increments of five. You can also change the settings for AM and PM by touching those buttons.

Cabin Conditioning (+ and -)

These change the setting for your selected cabin conditioning temperature for this GO Time event. You can select from four settings:

- 65ºF (18.5ºC)
- 72ºF (22.0ºC)
- 85ºF (29.5ºC)
- Off.

Note: *Cabin conditioning can perform differently depending on if you plug into a 120V convenience cord or 240V charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not always reach the set cabin temperature due to charging and ambient temperature conditions. This is normal operation.*

Clear

Touching this button erases the GO Time and cabin conditioning temperature.

Save

Touching this button stores the GO Time and temperature settings.

Note: *If you select a GO Time, but choose **Off** for the temperature setting, the vehicle schedules charging to be complete by your GO Time and does not condition the cabin.*

Note: *Make sure you save your settings before returning to the previous screen. If you do not touch **Save**, your settings are not stored in the system.*

Value Charge Profiles

Touch the **Edit** button next to the profile name on the Settings screen to see the value charge profiles.

Default

This displays the charging mode and off-peak times for your Default Value Charge profile. The system displays off-peak times for weekdays; the remaining hours of the day are considered peak time. The system displays similar off-peak times for weekend days.

- **Charge Now** if you want your vehicle to immediately charge when you plug it in at this profile location.
- **Value Charge** if you want to take advantage of off-peak electricity rates. The vehicle optimizes the charge schedule to be complete by the next GO Time.
- **Edit** to access your Default Value Charge Profile settings screen (see Default Value Charge Profile later in this section).

Customer Defined Value Charge Profiles

Once you create profile names, this section displays the Value Charge Profile names and current Charge Mode for specific locations. You can set up and edit these profiles using the MyFord Mobile internet or smartphone application. You can program up to nine unique charge profiles.

Default Value Charge Profile

Weekday and Weekend

Touch the **Edit** button to set the off-peak charge times. Set the Weekday times and Weekend time (by touching the **Weekday** and **Weekend** buttons), then touch **Save**. The system does not store your settings until you make selections for both Weekday and Weekend. If you touch the back arrow button to return to the previous screen without saving your settings, the system does not store them and you need to enter them again.

Start and Finish

These buttons display the times, which you can modify, using the following:

- **+** and **-** allow you to change the hours of your start and finish times.
- **AM** and **PM** allow you to change the time of your start and finish time. This setting is viewable in 12-hour mode.

240V and 120V

These represent the voltage service the default profile is using. The system uses this selection to calculate estimated charge times.

Clear

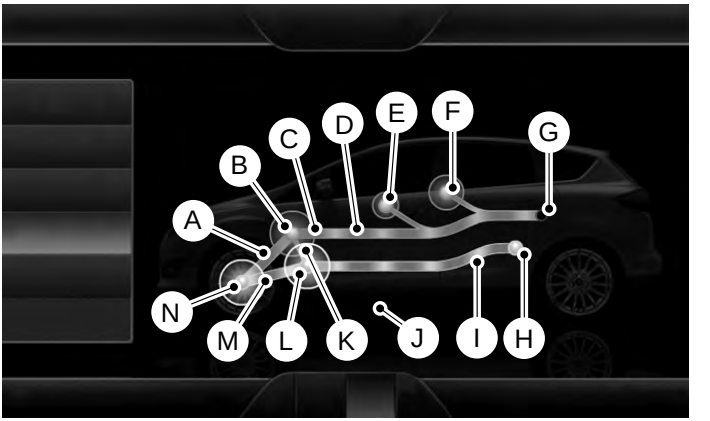
Touching this button erases the Default Value Charge preferences.

Save All

Touching this button stores your Default Value Charge preferences

Note: *Make sure you save your settings before returning to the previous screen. If you do not touch **Save**, your settings are not stored in the system.*

Power



E169381

A **Motor-to-wheel flow** shows the direction of power flow between the wheels and the electric motor.

B **Electric Motor** represents the hybrid electric motor. The higher the motor power is, the larger the circle around this node. Any time the vehicle is ready to be driven, the motor node illuminates.

C **Battery-to-motor flow**[1] shows the direction of power flow between the high-voltage battery and the electric motor. Flow toward the motor indicates the battery is providing power to accelerate the vehicle (discharging the battery). Flow toward the battery indicates the electric motor is providing power to the battery (charging the battery).

D **Plug (Energi only)** appears when you plug your vehicle into the wall. When charging the high voltage battery from the wall, you can see flow from the plug to the battery on the screen.

E **Other**[2] includes all power usage from the low voltage accessories such as the climate control fan, headlights and heated seats. The higher the power usage is from these accessories, the larger the circle around the node. This node illuminates anytime the vehicle is on since there is always some low level power in use.

F **Climate**[2,3] includes the power usage from the high-voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater (Energi only). The higher the power usage is from these components, the larger the circle around this node.

G **High voltage battery power** represents your high-voltage battery. A circle illuminates around the node when the high-voltage battery is receiving power from regenerative braking, engine charging or external charging (when you plug it in). The higher the power going into the high-voltage battery, the larger the circle around this node.

H **Fuel** represents the fuel tank in the vehicle.

I **Fuel-to-engine flow** shows flow from the fuel tank to the engine when the engine is on and using fuel (there are some cases where the engine is on, but not using any fuel). When the engine is on, but not using fuel, the engine node is active, but the fuel flow path is off. An example of this is when your foot is off the accelerator pedal and the vehicle is traveling at a high speed.

J **Engine On due to** provides you with the reason(s) the gasoline engine is on. When the gasoline engine is off, this display does not appear. **Engine On due to** reasons displayed by the system are in a chart following this list.

K **Motor-to-engine flow** shows the direction of power flow between the engine and the electric motor. The direction indicates if the engine is providing power to the high-voltage electrical system, or if the high-voltage electrical system is providing power to control or start the engine.

L **Engine power** represents the gasoline engine. It illuminates only when the gasoline engine is on. The higher the engine power is, the larger the circle around this node.

M **Engine-to-wheels flow** shows the direction of the power flow between the engine and the wheels.

N **Drive power** represents the power going to the wheels. The higher the wheel power is, the larger the circle around this node. When the engine is off, drive power is shown in blue. When the engine is on, drive power is shown in grey.

[1]The battery-to-motor flow includes battery power the vehicle is using for acceleration. It does not include energy the vehicle is using for accessories (such as air conditioning, headlights and radio). This screen displays accessories and climate usage separately.

[2] **Accessories** indicates electrical power demands from your vehicle's accessory systems. Accessories use power but do not contribute to making the vehicle move. The power flow displays power usage from the climate control system and other accessories separately.

[3]The climate control system may determine A/C is necessary even when you turn it off. In this case, you may see some climate power when the A/C is off.

Engine On due to	
Engine Cold (Hybrid only)	The engine is on to warm-up. The vehicle returns to electric mode when the engine is warm. This reason may reappear during a drive or after shutting the vehicle down for a short period. This is normal operation.
Heater Setting	The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or turn off the heater setting to return to electric mode.
High Speed	The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for electric mode operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric mode.
Acceleration	The engine is on when you apply pressure to the accelerator pedal or when you turn the speed control on. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or turn off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
Neutral Gear	The engine is on because the vehicle is in neutral gear. Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric mode.
Low Gear	The engine is on because the vehicle is in low gear. Shift out of low gear to return to electric mode.
Battery Charging	The engine is on to charge the high-voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric mode once the battery is charged.
Grade Assist	The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking when you turn on the grade assist feature. Turn off the grade assist feature to return to electric mode.

Engine On due to	
Oil Maintenance (Energi Only)	The engine is on to maintain engine oil quality. The vehicle returns to electric mode when engine oil maintenance is complete. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).
Batt Temperature (Energi Only)	The engine is on due to high or low high-voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric mode automatically when possible.
Normal Operation	The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric mode when possible.

Status

This indicates which mode is active within the vehicle system.

Hybrid Drive

The electric motor and gasoline engine are powering vehicle.

Charging HV Battery

The hybrid system is storing power in the high-voltage battery.

Idle

The vehicle is either at rest, or sharing very little power between the electric system parts.

Idle with Charging

The high-voltage battery is receiving power in order to recharge.

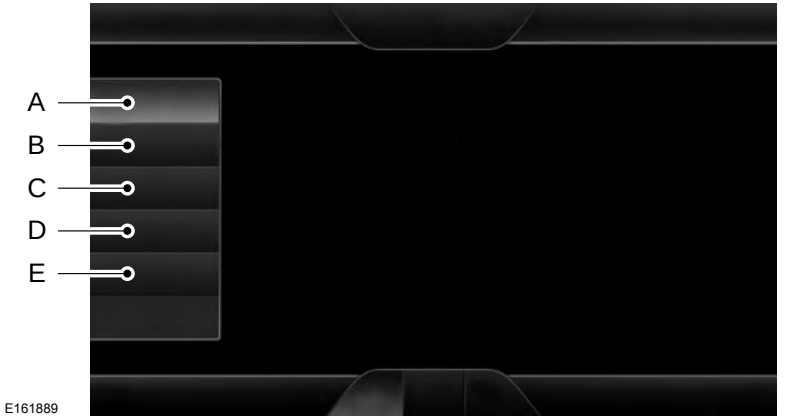
Electric Drive

The vehicle is driving in electric mode (the power is coming from the electric motor). The gasoline engine is off in this mode.

Charge Complete (Energi only)

The high-voltage battery charging from the wall is complete.

INFORMATION



A	SYNC Services
B	SIRIUS Travel Link
C	Alerts
D	Calendar
E	SYNC Applications

Under the Information menu, you can access features such as:

- SYNC Services
- SIRIUS Travel Link
- Alerts
- Calendar
- SYNC Applications

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

SYNC Services (If Equipped, United States Only)

Note: *SYNC Services requires activation before use. Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See* ***Phone*** *(page 359).*

Note: *This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Make sure your cellular phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.*

Note: *The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features provided are only an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.*

Note: *When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect your vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request, for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at www.SYNCMyRide.com. If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect your vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not subscribe or use the service.*

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit www.SYNCMyRide.com.

Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands

1. Press the voice button.
2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.
3. Once you connect to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Touchscreen

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button.

If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the green tab on your touchscreen.

1. Select **Connect to Services** to initiate an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your phone.
2. Once connected, follow the voice prompts to request your desired Service, such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
3. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say "Directions" or "Business search". To find the closest business or type of business to your current location, just say "Business search" and then "Search near me". If you need further assistance in finding a location you can say "Operator" at any time within a Directions or Business search to speak with a live operator. The system may prompt you to speak with an operator when it has difficulty matching your voice request. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com/support.
2. Follow the voice prompts to select your Destination. After the route download is finished, the phone call automatically ends.

If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation:

- Turn-by-turn directions appear in the information display, in the status bar of your touchscreen system and on the SYNC Services screen. You also receive driving instructions from audible prompts.
- When on an active route, you can select **Route Summary** or **Route Status** using the touchscreen controls or voice commands to view the **Route Summary Turn List** or the **Route Status ETA**. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say, "Yes" when prompted and the system delivers a new route to your vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, SYNC Services downloads your requested destination to the navigation system. The navigation system then calculates the route and provides driving instructions. See **Navigation** (page 387).

Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the hang-up phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say "Good-bye" from the SYNC Services main menu.

SYNC Services quick tips	
Personalizing	You can personalize your Services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points, such as work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams, such as Detroit Lions, or a news category. You can learn more about personalization by logging onto www.SYNCMyRide.com.
Push to interrupt	Press the voice button at any time (while connected to SYNC Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report) and say your voice command.
Portable	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with SYNC Services and continue enjoying your personalized services.

SYNC Services Voice Commands

When a route has been downloaded (non-navigation systems), press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"SERVICES"
"Cancel route"
"Navigation voice off"
"Navigation voice on"
"Next turn"
"Route status"
"Route summary"
"Services"
"Update route"
"Help"

SIRIUS Travel Link (If Equipped)

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *In order to use SIRIUS Travel Link, your vehicle must be equipped with navigation and your navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot.*

Note: *A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.*

Note: *Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic# and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SIRIUS Travel Link.*

Note: *Neither SIRIUS nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SIRIUS Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.*

When you subscribe to SIRIUS Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Traffic On Route and Traffic Nearby

Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, nearby your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.

Fuel Prices

Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.

Movie Listings

Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.

Weather

Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five day forecast for the chosen area. Select **Map** to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds. Select **Area** to select from a listing of weather locations.

Sports Info

Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.

Ski Conditions

Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.

SIRIUS Travel Link Voice Commands

Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"SIRIUS TRAVEL LINK"
"5-day weather forecast"
"Fuel prices"
"Movie listings"
"Sports headlines"*
"Sports schedules"*
"Sports scores"*
"Traffic"
"Weather"
"Weather map"
"Help"

* If you say "Sports headlines", "Sports schedules" or "Sports scores", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

Sports-related commands
"Baseball"
"College basketball"
"College football"
"Golf"
"MLS"
"My teams"
"NBA"
"NFL"
"NHL"
"WNBA"
"Help"

Additional sports-related voice commands
"Baseball headlines"
"Baseball schedule"
"Baseball scores"
"College basketball headlines"
"College basketball schedule"
"College basketball scores"
"College football headlines"
"College football schedule"
"College football scores"
"Golf headlines"
"Golf leaderboard"
"Golf schedule"
"MLS headlines"

Additional sports-related voice commands
"MLS schedule"
"MLS scores"
"Motor sports headlines"
"Motor sports order"
"Motor sports schedule"
"My team headlines"
"My teams schedule"
"My teams scores"
"NBA headlines"
"NBA schedule"
"NBA scores"
"NFL headlines"
"NFL schedule"
"NFL scores"
"NHL headlines"
"NHL schedule"
"NHL scores"
"WNBA headlines"
"WNBA schedule"
"WNBA scores"
"Help"

Alerts

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Alerts**, and then choose from any of the following services:

- **View** the complete message.
- **Delete** the message.
- **Delete All** messages.

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

Note: *The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.*

Calendar

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

911 Assist (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help, which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time, which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

WARNINGS

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone, which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user turns 911 Assist on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message (or icon) comes on (or both) when your vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excludes knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 34). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 187). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Setting 911 Assist On

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Touch **Apps** > **911 Assist**, then select **On**.

You can also access 911 Assist by:

- Pressing the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Phone** > **911 Assist**, or
- Pressing the Settings icon > **Help** > **911 Assist**.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the United States, Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would trigger 911 Assist); however, SYNC tries to contact emergency services if 911 Assist triggers. If a connected phone sustains damage or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you turn on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

Vehicle Health Report (If Equipped)

WARNING

Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace, normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems electronically monitored by your vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (such as brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Note: *This feature is only available in the United States.*

Note: *Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.*

Note: *This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Before running a report, review the Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice.*

Note: *In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.*

Note: *Cellular phone and SMS charges may apply when making a report.*

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at www.SYNCMyRide.com. After registering, you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at www.SYNCMyRide.com to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to remind you automatically to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Cellular phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of a diagnostic report card. The Vehicle Health Report contains valuable information, such as:

- Vehicle diagnostic information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open recalls and Field Service Actions
- Items noted during vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer that still need servicing.

Making a Report

If you want to run a report by using the touchscreen, touch **Apps** > **Vehicle Health Report**.

To run a report by voice command, press the voice button on the steering wheel and, when prompted, say "Vehicle health report".

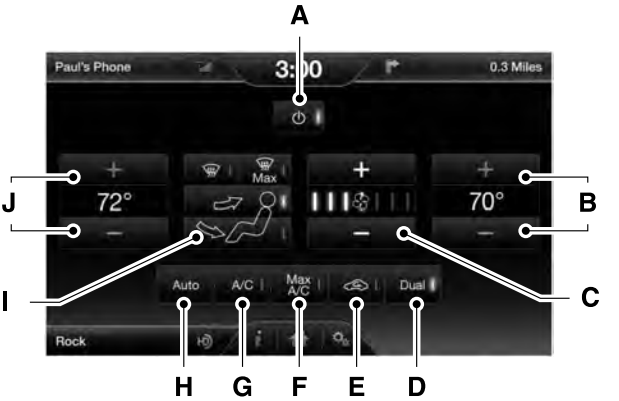
Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you create a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect more vehicle information. Ford may use your vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at www.SYNCMyRide.com. See www.SYNCMyRide.com (Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement) for more information.

CLIMATE

Press the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from the screen shown here.



E146988

A **Power:** Touch to switch the system off and on. Outside air cannot enter your vehicle when you switch off the system.

B **Passenger settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.

C **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to adjust fan speed.

D **DUAL:** Touch to switch on the passenger temperature control.

E **Recirculated air:** Touch to turn the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when MAX A/C or MAX defrost is selected and may be engaged manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C and MAX defrost to reduce fog potential.

F **MAX A/C:** Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.

G **A/C:** Touch to turn the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost.

H **AUTO:** Touch to engage automatic operation, then set the temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically controls fan speed, airflow distribution, A/C on or off and the use of fresh or recirculated air.

I **Manual airflow distribution controls:Footwell and Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents, and provides outside air to reduce window fogging. **Panel:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents. **Panel and Floor:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Floor:** Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. **MAX Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield air vents and automatically switches the air conditioning on. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control.

J **Driver settings:** Touch + or – adjust the temperature.

Climate Control Voice Commands

Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

Climate Control Commands
"Climate automatic"
"Climate off"
"Climate on"
"Climate temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Climate temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Help"

There are additional climate control commands but in order to access them, you have to say "Climate" first. When the system is ready to listen, you may say any of the following commands:

"CLIMATE"	
"A/C off"	"Off"
"A/C on"	"On"
"Automatic"	"Panel floor on"
"Defrost off"	"Panel on"
"Defrost on"	"Panel off"
"Dual off"	"Recirc off"
"Floor on"	"Recirc on"
"Fan decrease"	"Temperature"*
"Fan increase"	"Temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Floor off"	"Temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Floor windshield panel on"	"Temperature decrease"
"MAX A/C off"	"Temperature high"
"MAX A/C on"	"Temperature increase"
"Max defrost off"	"Temperature low"
"Max defrost on"	"Windshield floor on"

"CLIMATE"	
"Max fan"	"Windshield panel on"
"Min fan"	"Help"

* If you say "Temperature", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

"TEMPERATURE"
"<15.5-29.5> degrees"
"<60-85> degrees"
"High"
"Low"
"Help"

NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: *The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.*

Note: *The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.*

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

To set a destination, press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the **Dest** button when it appears. See **Setting a destination** later in this chapter.

To view the navigation map and your vehicle's current location, touch the green bar in the upper right hand corner of the touchscreen, or, press **Dest**, then **Map**. See **Map mode** later in this chapter.

Setting a Destination

Press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the **Dest** button when it appears. Choose any of the following:

Destination
My Home
Favorites
Previous Destinations
Point of Interest
Emergency
Street Address
Intersection
City Center
Map
Edit Route Cancel Route

1. Enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order). For address destination entry, the **Go!** button appears once you enter all the necessary information. Pressing the **Go!** button makes the address location appear on the map. If you choose **Previous Destination**, the last 20 destinations you have selected appear.
2. Select **Set as Dest** to make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. The system considers any **Avoid Areas** selections in its route calculation.
3. Choose from up to three different types of routes, and then select **Start Route**.

- Fastest: Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
- Shortest: Uses the shortest distance possible.
- Eco Route: Uses the most fuel-efficient route.

You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. Select **Route Prefs** to set route preferences like avoiding freeways, tollroads, ferries and car trains as well as to use or not use high-occupancy vehicle lanes. (High-occupancy vehicle lanes are also known as carpool or diamond lanes. People who ride in buses, vanpools or carpools use these lanes.)

Note: *If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the **Start Route** button, the system defaults to the Fastest Route option and begins guidance.*

During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

Point of Interest (POI) Categories

Main categories
Food/Drink & Dining
Travel & Transportation
Financial
Emergency
Community
Health & Medicine
Automotive
Shopping
Entertainment & Arts
Recreation & Sports
Government
Domestic Services

Subcategories
Restaurant
Golf
Parking
Home & Garden
Personal Care Services
Auto Dealership

Subcategories
Govt Office
Public Transit
Education

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically, by distance or by cityseekr listings (if available).

Range Rings and Charge Points (Energi Only)

E161378

Shaded rings appear on the map when you are driving in EV Now mode. The inner ring with no shading indicates a safe range you can travel using plug-in power only. The lightly shaded outer band reflects areas you may or may not be able to reach while in EV Now mode. If your destination is within this band, your vehicle may operate in Auto EV mode, running the engine as needed. The darker shaded area, beyond the rings, is not likely reachable using only the vehicle's available plug-in energy.

The rings represent approximate ranges. Actual route distances, road grades, vehicle speed, accessory usage and other conditions affect how far your vehicle can travel in EV Now mode before recharging.

You can turn off the rings in the Settings menu. Press the Settings icon > **Navigation** > **Map Preferences**.

You can turn the charge point POIs on and off. Touch the map, use the buttons at the bottom of the screen, and then select the POI icon button. The icons only appear at a map scale of 5 miles (8 kilometers) and lower.

cityseekr

Note: *cityseekr point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 912 cities (881 in the United States, 20 in Canada and 11 in Mexico).*

E142634

cityseekr, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address and phone number. If cityseekr lists the point of interest, more information is available, such as a brief description, check-in and checkout times or restaurant hours.

Press **More Information** for a longer review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price as well as the website. This screen displays the point of interest icon such as:

Hotel

Coffeehouse

Food & Drink

Nightlife

Attraction

This icon appears when your selection exists in multiple categories within the system.

When you are viewing more information for hotels, cityseekr also tells you if the hotel has certain services and facilities using icons, such as:

- Restaurant
- Business center
- Handicap facilities
- Laundry
- Refrigerator
- 24 hour room service
- Fitness center
- Internet access
- Pool
- Wi-fi.

For restaurants, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Navigation**.

Map Preferences

Breadcrumbs

Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. Turn this feature **ON** or **OFF**.

Turn List Format

Have the system display your turn list **Top to Bottom** or **Bottom to Top**.

Parking POI Notification

Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. Turn this feature **ON** or **OFF**. When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display.

Route Preferences

Preferred Route

Choose to have the system display the Shortest, Fastest or most Ecological route first. If you set **Always Use Preferred Route** to **Yes**, the system uses the selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.

Always Use Preferred Route

Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting.

Eco Time Penalty

Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.

Avoid

These features allow you to choose to have the system avoid freeways, toll roads, ferries and car trains when planning your route. Turn these features **ON** or **OFF**.

Use HOV Lanes

Have the system use high-occupancy vehicle lanes, if available, when planning your route.

Navigation Preferences

Guidance Prompts

Have the system use **Voice & Tones** or **Tone Only** on your programmed route.

Auto - Fill State/Province

Have the system automatically fill in the state and province based on the information already entered into the system. Turn this feature **ON** or **OFF**.

Traffic Preferences

Avoid Traffic Problems

Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.

- **Automatic:** Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification.
- **Manual:** Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.

Traffic Alert Notification

Have the system display traffic alert notifications.

Other traffic alert features allows you to turn on certain, or all, traffic icons on the map such as road work, incident, accidents and closed roads. Scroll down to view all the different types of alerts. Turn these features **ON** or **OFF**.

Avoid Areas

Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you.

Press **Add** to program an entry. Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To delete a selection, choose the listing on the screen. When the screen changes to **Avoid Areas Edit**, you can press **Delete** at the bottom right of the screen.

Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints, and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies, and improves with updated map releases.

E162051

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes: Heading up, North up, and 3D.

Heading up (2D map) always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 2.5 miles (4 kilometers). The system remembers this setting for larger map scales, but shows the map in North up only. If the scale returns below this level, the system restores Heading up.

North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.

3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

View switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.

Menu displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings, View/Edit Route, SIRIUS Travel Link, Guidance Mute and Cancel Route.

Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To turn the feature off, just press the **+** or **-** button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

Map Icons

Vehicle mark shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.

Scroll cursor allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.

Address book entry default icon(s) indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.

Home indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.

POI (Point Of Interest) icons indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.

Starting point indicates the starting point of a planned route.

Waypoint indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.

Destination symbol indicates the ending point of a planned route.

Next maneuver point indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.

No GPS symbol indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

Set as Dest

Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch **Set as Dest**.

Set as Waypoint

Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.

Save to Favorites

Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.

POI Icons

Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. Turn these **ON** or **OFF**.

Cancel Route

Touch this button to cancel the active route.

View/Edit Route

Access these features when a route is active:

- View Route
- Edit Destination/Waypoints
- Edit Turn List
- Detour
- Edit Route Preferences
- Edit Traffic Preferences
- Cancel Route.

Nokia is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to Nokia by going to http://mapreporter.navteq.com. Nokia evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-800-NAVMAPS (in Mexico, call 01-800-557-5539) or going to www.navigation.com/ford. You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

Navigation Voice Commands

When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. After the tone, say any of the following commands:

Navigation system voice commands
"Cancel next waypoint" [1]
"Cancel route"[1]
"Destination"[2]
"Destination <nametag>"
"Destination <POI category>"
"Destination favorites"
"Destination home"
"Destination intersection"
"Destination nearest <POI category>"
"Destination nearest POI"
"Destination play nametags"

Navigation system voice commands
"Destination POI"
"Destination POI category"
"Destination previous destination"
"Destination street address"
"Detour"[1]
"Navigation"[3]
"Navigation voice volume decrease"
"Navigation voice volume increase"
"Repeat instruction"[1]
"Show 3D"
"Show heading up"
"Show map"
"Show north up"
"Show route"[1]
"Show turn list"[1]
"Voice guidance off"
"Voice guidance on"
"Where am I?"
"Zoom in"

Navigation system voice commands
"Zoom out"
"Help"

[1] These commands are only available when a navigation route is active.

[2] If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the following "Destination" chart.

[3] If you say "Navigation", you can then say any command in the following "Navigation" chart.

"DESTINATION"
"<nametag>"
"<POI category>"
"Favorites"
"Home"
"Intersection"
"Nearest <POI category>"
"Nearest POI"
"Play nametags"
"POI category"
"Previous destination"
"Street address"
"Help"

"NAVIGATION"
"Destination"*
"Zoom city"
"Zoom country"
"Zoom minimum"

"NAVIGATION"
"Zoom maximum"
"Zoom province"
"Zoom state"
"Zoom street"
"Zoom to <distance>"
"Help"

* If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the "Destination" chart.

One-shot Destination Street Address

When you say either "Navigation destination street address" or "Destination street address", the system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen. You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact an authorized dealer or visit our online store at **Accessories.Ford.com** (United States only).

Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Ford Motor Company will warrant your vehicle's accessories through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12000 miles (20000 km) (whichever occurs first)
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior style

- Hood deflector*
- Side window deflectors
- Splash guards
- Custom graphics*

Interior style

- Floor mats
- Accent lighting
- Cargo area protector

Lifestyle

- Ash cup or smoker's packages
- Soft cargo organizers
- Cargo net*
- Rear seat entertainment
- Roof racks and carriers*

Peace of mind

- Keyless entry keypad
- Remote start
- Vehicle security systems
- Wheel locks
- Bumper-mounted parking assist system*
- Car covers
- Charge cord storage bag*

*The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if their manufacturer did not design them specifically for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, for example anti-lock brake systems, do not locate amateur radio antennas in the area of the driver side hood.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford custom electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS") . Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. $250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

TeleNav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software.

TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon

any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; (c) remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or (e) use the TeleNav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The TeleNav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to TeleNav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the TeleNav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to TeleNav's third party vendor licensors:

NavTeq End User License Agreement

END USER TERMS

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not

installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact NT, please visit www.navteq.com.

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

NT holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service ® to publish and sell ZIP+4 ® information.

© United States Postal Service ® 2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service ® The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain Data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

License Limitations on Use: You agree that your license to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

License Limitations on Transfer: Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Additional License Limitations: Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NT in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

WARNING

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty: This Data is provided to you "as is" , and you agree to use it at your own risk. NT and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NT OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control: You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit NT from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NT (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Severability: You and NT agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

Governing Law: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial term" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

NAME:

NAVTEQ

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101

and is subject to the End User License Agreement under

which this Data was provided.

© 2011 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Wi-Fi hotspot data provided by JiWire, © 2013 JiWire.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6.240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL

WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

SERVICE PLANS (U.S. Only)

More than 32 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford Extended Service Plan. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides peace of mind protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford Extended Service Plan. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Extended Service Plan is honored by all authorized Ford and Lincoln dealers in the U.S. and Canada. It is the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using Genuine Ford and Lincoln parts

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

You take advantage of replacement transportation if your vehicle is at your authorized dealer for same day covered repairs.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper to Bumper warranty repairs, or Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Extended Service Plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you sell your vehicle, prospective buyers may have a higher degree of confidence that vehicle was properly maintained with Ford ESP, thereby improving resale value.

Avoid the Rising Cost of Properly Maintaining Your Vehicle!

Ford Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and select items that routinely wear out.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of select items that require periodic attention for normal wear:

- Windshield Wiper Blades
- Spark Plugs (except in California)
- The Clutch Disc
- Brake Pads and Linings
- Shock Absorbers
- Belts and Hoses
- Diesel Exhaust Fluid Replenishment

Contact your selling authorized Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

Interest Free Finance Options Available

Take advantage of our interest free installment payment plan. Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program.

To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377. Don't forget to ask about our interest free payment program, allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles!

Complete the information below and mail to:

Ford ESP
P.O. Box 8072
Royal Oak, MI 48068-0039

Name (PLEASE PRINT)		
ADDRESS	**APT.#**	
CITY	**STATE**	**ZIP**
E-MAIL		

SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan. Ford Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

When you purchase Ford Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers. The Lincoln Maintenance Protection Plan is honored at authorized Lincoln dealers.

Note: *Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 265).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

C-MAX Full Hybrid

Your vehicle is equipped with an information display, which indicates the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers).

When **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing. Make sure you reset the oil monitoring system after each oil change.

If your information display resets prematurely, becomes inoperative or the vehicle battery becomes discharged or disconnected, the oil monitoring system resets to 100% oil life. You should change your engine oil one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) from the previous oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

C-MAX Energi Plug-in Hybrid

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to two years or 20000 miles (32000 kilometers).

When **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change.

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed two years or 20000 miles (32000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

All Vehicles

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle’s normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Check every month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

Check every six months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Check Every 12 Months (C-MAX Energi Plug-in Hybrid Only)

Inspect the engine oil filter for signs of damage such as rust, paint blistering, scratches or dents. If any of these conditions are present, replace the filter. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 421).

Multi-point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-point inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Tires for wear and proper pressure**
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

**If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® (C-MAX Energi Plug-in Hybrid Only)

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Miles (kilometers)	**Vehicle use and example**
7500-10000 (12000-16000)	**Normal**
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 (8000-11999)	**Severe**
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 (4000-7999)	**Extreme**
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

Normal Maintenance Intervals

C-MAX Full Hybrid

Normal scheduled maintenance[1,2]	
Every 12 months or 10000 miles (16000 km). The oil monitoring system displays a message in the information display.	Change engine oil and filter.[3]
	Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
	Inspect automatic transmission fluid level. Consult dealer for requirements.
	Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
	Inspect engine cooling system and motor/electronics cooling system strength and hoses.
	Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
	Inspect half-shaft boots.
	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension and tie-rod ends.
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

[1] Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

[2] Perform multi-point inspection (recommended).

[3] Reset the oil monitoring system after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).

Other maintenance items*	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant and motor/electronics coolant.**

Other maintenance items*	
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

* Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

** Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

C-MAX Energi Plug-in Hybrid

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display.[1,2]
Change engine oil and filter.[3]
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level. Consult dealer for requirements.
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect engine cooling system and motor/electronics cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect half-shaft boots.
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension and tie-rod ends.
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

[1] Do not exceed two years or 20000 miles (32000 kilometers) between service intervals.

[2] Perform multi-point inspection (recommended).

[3] Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).

Other maintenance items [1]	
Every 10000 miles (16000 km)	Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
	Inspect engine oil filter for corrosion. [2]
	Perform multi-point inspection (recommended).
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant and motor/electronics coolant. [3]
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

[1] Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

[2] Inspect the engine oil filter for corrosion every one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers). If corrosion is present, change the filter then top-off the engine oil, if required. Do not reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor.

[3] Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing in the information display.

- **Example 1**: The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message comes on at 28751 miles (46270 kilometers). Perform the 30000-mile (48000 kilometer) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2**: The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30000 miles (48000 kilometers) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25000 miles [40000 kilometers]). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)	
As required	**C-MAX full hybrid:** Change engine oil and filter every 12 months or 10000 miles (16000 km). The oil monitoring system displays a message in the information display. Perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
	C-MAX Energi plug-in hybrid: Change engine oil and filter as indicated by information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.*
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

* **C-MAX Energi Plug-in Hybrid only:** Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.

* **C-MAX Energi Plug-in Hybrid only:** Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 212).

Exceptions

There are some exceptions your Normal Scheduled Maintenance:

California fuel filter replacement: If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Hot climate oil change intervals: Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5000 miles (8000 kilometers).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 3000 miles (4800 kilometers).

Engine air filter and cabin air filter replacement: The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

A

A/C
See: Climate Control.....105
About This Manual.....7
Protecting the Environment.....7
ABS
See: Brakes.....156
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....157
Accessories.....397
Exterior style.....397
Interior style.....397
Lifestyle.....397
Peace of mind.....397
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....11
Active Park Assist.....164
Automatic Steering into Parking Space.....165
Deactivating the Park Assist Feature.....166
Troubleshooting the System.....167
Using Active Park Assist.....164
Adjusting the Headlamps.....221
Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....222
Vertical Aim Adjustment.....221
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....65
Airbag Disposal.....42
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control.....105
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....64
Ambient Lighting.....75
Anti-Theft Alarm.....64
Arming the Alarm.....64
Disarming the Alarm.....64
Appendices.....399
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....87
Automatic Transmission Warning Chime.....87
Engine On Warning Chime.....87
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....87
Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....87
Keyless Warning Alert.....87
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....87
Audio Control.....65
Seek, Next or Previous.....66
Audio Input Jack.....285
Audio System.....272
General Information.....272
Audio unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....273
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....275
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD.....277
Menu Structure.....278
Autolamps.....71
Automatic Climate Control.....105
Temperature Control.....106
Automatic Transmission.....153
Automatic Transmission.....153
Brake-Shift Interlock.....154
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....155
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....217
Autowipers.....68
Auxiliary Power Points.....121
110-volt AC power point.....121
12-volt DC power point.....121
Locations.....121

B

Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....209
Booster Seats.....21
Types of Booster Seats.....22
Brake Fluid Check.....217
Brakes.....156
General Information.....156
Breaking-In.....184
Bulb Specification Chart.....227

C

Cabin Air Filter.....108
California Proposition 65.....11
Capacities and Specifications.....265
Technical Specifications.....269
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....232

Center Console....123
Changing a Bulb....222
Lamp Assembly Condensation....222
Replacing Fog, Park and Turn Signal Bulbs....224
Replacing Headlamp Bulbs....223
Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb....227
Replacing Reverse Lamp and Tail Lamp Bulbs:....226
Replacing Tail, Brake and Turn Signal Bulbs....225
Replacing the Center High Mounted Brake Lamp Bulbs....227
Changing a Fuse....207
Fuses....207
Changing the 12V Battery....218
Changing the Engine Air Filter....229
Identifying Air Filter Element Components....229
Installing the Engine Air Filter Element....230
Removing the Engine Air Filter Element....230
Changing the Wiper Blades....219
Changing the Front Wiper Blades....220
Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade....220
Setting the Front Wipers in the Service Position....220
Charging the High Voltage Battery....148
CHARGING THE HIGH-VOLTAGE BATTERY (ENERGI VEHICLES)....148
Checking MyKey System Status....50
Checking the Wiper Blades....219
Child Restraint and Safety Belt Maintenance....32
Child Safety....14
General Information....14
Child Safety Locks....24
Left-Hand Side....25
Right-Hand Side....25
Child Seat Positioning....23
Cleaning Leather Seats....235
Cleaning Products....232
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels....236
Cleaning the Engine....233
Cleaning the Exterior....232
Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts....233
Exterior Chrome....232
Stripes or Graphics (if equipped)....232
Underbody....233
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens....234
Cleaning the Interior....234
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades....234
Clearing All MyKeys....50
Climate....384
Climate Control Voice Commands....385
Climate Control....105
Collision, Damage or Fire Event....191
Guidance for Ford Motor Company Electric and Hybrid-Electric Vehicles Equipped With High Voltage Batteries....191
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....213
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....41
Creating a MyKey....50
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings....50
Cruise Control....66
Principle of Operation....171
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....171
Customer Assistance....194

D

Data Recording....9
Event Data Recording....9
Service Data Recording....9
Daytime Running Lamps....73
Digital Radio....280
HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting....281
Direction Indicators....73
Driver and Passenger Airbags....35
Children and Airbags....35
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment....35
Driver Knee Airbag....39
Driving Aids....173
Driving Hints....184
Driving Through Water....185

DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....73

E

Economical Driving.....184
Electric Vehicle Information.....364
Power.....371
Settings (Energi Only).....365
Emission Control System.....143
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....144
Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....144
End User License Agreement.....399
SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA).....399
Engine Block Heater.....127
Using the Engine Block Heater.....128
Engine Coolant Check.....213
Adding Coolant.....214
Adding Engine Coolant.....215
Adding Inverter System Controller Coolant.....215
Checking the Engine Coolant.....213
Checking the Inverter System Controller Coolant.....213
Engine Coolant and Inverter System Controller Coolant.....213
Recycled Engine Coolant.....215
Severe Climates.....215
What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling.....216
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....63
Engine Oil Check.....212
Adding Engine Oil.....212
Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System.....212
Engine Oil Dipstick.....212
Engine Specifications.....265
Entertainment.....341
A/V Inputs.....357
AM/FM Radio.....343
Bluetooth Audio.....357
Browsing Device Content.....341
CD.....352
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....353
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....348
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....356
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording.....9
Export Unique Options.....13
Exterior Mirrors.....77
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....78
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....78
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....78
Power Exterior Mirrors.....77
Signal Indicator Mirrors.....78

F

Fastening the Safety Belts.....27
Restraint of Pregnant Women.....27
Safety Belt Extension Assembly.....29
Safety Belt Locking Modes.....28
Flat Tire Inflation
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....239
Floor Mats.....186
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps.....73
Ford Credit.....11
(U.S. Only).....11
Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP).....414
SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY).....416
SERVICE PLANS (U.S. Only).....414
Front Fog Lamps.....73
Front Passenger Sensing System.....36
Fuel and Refueling.....135
Fuel Consumption.....142
Calculating Fuel Economy.....142
Filling the Tank.....142
Fuel Filter.....217

Fuel Quality.....136
Choosing the Right Fuel.....136
Fuel Freshness Mode (Energi Vehicles Only).....136
Octane Recommendations.....136
Fuel Shutoff.....188
Fuses.....200
Fuse Specification Chart.....200
Luggage Compartment Fuse Panel.....205
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....203
Power Distribution Box.....200
Pre-Fuse Box.....200

G

Garage Door Opener
See: Universal Garage Door Opener.....117
Gauges.....81
Common Displays.....82
Left Information Display.....81
Right Information Display.....81
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....43
Intelligent Access.....43
General Maintenance Information.....417
Multi-point Inspection.....420
Owner Checks and Services.....419
Protecting Your Investment.....417
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....417
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?.....417
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....197
Getting the Services You Need.....194
Away From Home.....194
Global Opening.....77
Opening the Windows.....77

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake.....157
Hazard Warning Flashers.....188
Headlamp Exit Delay.....73
Head Restraints.....110
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....111
Heated Seats.....115
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....107
Heated Exterior Mirror.....108
Heated Rear Window.....107
Heating
See: Climate Control.....105
HEV
See: Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....129
High Voltage Battery Cut-Off Switch.....151
High Voltage Battery.....146
General Information.....146
Hill Start Assist.....157
Using Hill Start Assist.....158
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....107
General Hints.....107
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....157
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....209
Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....129
Hybrid Vehicle Operation (C-MAX Hybrid and C-MAX Energi).....130
Plug-in Power Mode and Hybrid Mode (C-MAX Energi Only).....129

I

Ignition Switch.....124
In California (U.S. Only).....195
Information Display Control.....66
Multimedia Controls.....67
Information Displays.....88
General Information.....88
Information.....375
911 Assist.....381
Alerts.....380
Calendar.....381
SIRIUS Travel Link.....378
SYNC Services (If Equipped, United States Only).....375
Vehicle Health Report.....383

Information Messages.....98
AdvanceTrac®.....98
Alarm.....99
Battery and Charging System (High Voltage).....99
Doors.....99
Fuel.....100
Hill Start Assist.....100
Keys and Intelligent Access.....100
Maintenance.....101
MyKey.....102
Park Aid.....103
Park Brake.....103
Power Steering.....103
Remote Start.....103
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....104
Transmission.....104
Installing Child Seats.....15
Child Seats.....15
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....16
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH).....18
Using Tether Straps.....20
Instrument Cluster.....81
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....72
Vehicles With Front Fog Lamps.....72
Vehicles Without Front Fog Lamps.....72
Interior Lamps.....73
Front Interior Lamp.....74
Rear Interior Lamp.....74
Interior Mirror.....79
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....79
Introduction.....7

J

Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....188
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....189
Jump Starting.....190
Preparing Your Vehicle.....188
Removing the Jumper Cables.....190

K

Keyless Starting.....124
Ignition Modes.....125
Keys and Remote Controls.....43

L

Lighting Control.....71
Headlamp Flasher.....71
High Beams.....71
Lighting.....71
Load Carrying.....174
Load Limit.....175
Vehicle Loading.....175
Locking and Unlocking.....55
Activating Intelligent Access.....56
Autolock.....57
Battery Saver.....58
Illuminated Entry.....58
Illuminated Exit.....58
Mechanical Key.....56
Opening a Rear Door from Inside.....56
Power Door Locks.....55
Remote Control.....55
Smart Unlocks For Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.....57
Smart Unlocks For Intelligent Access Keys.....57
Locks.....55
Luggage Covers.....174
Removing the Shade.....174

M

Maintenance.....209
General Information.....209
Manual Liftgate.....59
Closing the Liftgate.....59
Opening the Liftgate.....59
Manual Seats.....112
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat.....113
Lumbar Adjustment (If Equipped).....113
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....112
Recline Adjustment.....113
Media Hub.....286
Message Center
See: Information Displays.....88
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....107
See: Windows and Mirrors.....76
Mobile Communications Equipment.....12

Motorcraft Parts.....266
MyFord Touch™.....322
General Information.....322
MyKey Troubleshooting.....52
MyKey™.....49
Principle of Operation.....49

N

Navigation.....387
cityseekr.....389
Map Mode.....392
Navigation Map Updates.....394
Navigation Voice Commands.....394
Point of Interest (POI) Categories.....388
Quick-touch Buttons.....393
Setting a Destination.....387
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....390
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....421
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor® (C-MAX Energi Plug-in Hybrid Only).....421
Normal Maintenance Intervals.....422

O

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check.....212
Opening and Closing the Hood.....209
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....198
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....198
Overhead Console.....123

P

Parking Aid.....162
Front Sensing System.....163
Rear Sensing System.....162
Parking Aids.....162
Parking Brake.....157
Passive Anti-Theft System.....63
SecuriLock®.....63
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....63
Perchlorate.....11
Personal Safety System™.....33
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....33
Phone.....359
Making Calls.....360
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....360
Pairing Your Phone for the First Time.....360
Phone Menu Options.....361
Phone Settings.....362
Phone Voice Commands.....363
Receiving Calls.....361
Text Messaging.....361
Post-Crash Alert System.....193
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking.....55
Power Liftgate.....60
Obstacle Detection.....62
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....60
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....62
Power Seats.....113
Power Lumbar.....114
Power Steering Fluid Check.....217
Power Windows.....76
Accessory Delay.....77
Bounce-Back.....76
One-Touch Down.....76
One-Touch Up.....76
Window Lock.....76

R

Rear Seat Armrest.....116
Rear Seats.....115
Folding the Seatback (If Equipped).....115
Unfolding the Seatback.....115
Rear Under Floor Storage.....174
Rear View Camera.....168
Using the Rear View Camera System.....168
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera.....168
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....70
Rear Window Washer.....70
Rear Window Wiper.....70
Refueling.....138
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System (Non-Energi Vehicles).....138
Easy Fuel™ Capless System (Energi Vehicles Only).....139

Remote Control.....43
Car Finder.....47
Integrated Keyhead Transmitters.....43
Intelligent Access Key.....44
Remote Start (C-MAX Energi Only).....47
Replacing the Battery.....45
Sounding a Panic Alarm.....47
Remote Start.....108
Automatic Settings.....108
Heated and Cooled Devices.....109
Last Settings.....109
Removing a Headlamp.....222
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....236
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....11
Collision Repairs.....11
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....11
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....48
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....199
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....198
Roadside Assistance.....187
Vehicles Sold In Canada : Getting Roadside Assistance.....187
Vehicles Sold In Canada : Using Roadside Assistance.....187
Vehicles Sold In The U.S.: Getting Roadside Assistance.....187
Vehicles Sold In The U.S. : Using Roadside Assistance.....187
Roadside Emergencies.....187
Running-In
See: Breaking-In.....184
Running Out of Fuel.....137
Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container.....137

S

Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....29
Safety Belt Minder.....30
Belt-Minder®.....30
Safety Belts.....26
Principle of Operation.....26
Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....30
Conditions of operation.....30
Safety Canopy™.....39
Safety Precautions.....135
Satellite Radio.....282
Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN).....283
Satellite Radio Reception Factors.....283
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service.....283
Troubleshooting.....284
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....427
Scheduled Maintenance.....417
Seats.....110
Security.....63
Settings.....330
Clock.....331
Display.....331
Settings.....333
Sound.....332
Vehicle.....332
Side Airbags.....38
Sitting in the Correct Position.....110
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains.....259
Special Notices.....12
New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....12
Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles.....12
Special Instructions.....12
Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance.....12
Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow.....12
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....424
Exceptions.....426
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control.....171
Stability Control.....160
Principle of Operation.....160
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch.....124

Starting a Gasoline Engine.....125
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....127
Important Ventilating Information.....127
Switching Off the Vehicle When It Is Moving.....126
Switching Off the Vehicle When It Is Stationary.....126
Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....125
Vehicles with Keyless Start.....125
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....124
General Information.....124
Steering.....173
Electric Power Steering.....173
Steering Wheel.....65
Storage Compartments.....123
Sun Shades.....79
Bounce-Back.....80
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....80
Sun Shade Relearning.....80
Sun Visors.....79
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....79
Supplementary Restraints System.....34
Principle of Operation.....34
Symbols Glossary.....7
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....302
911 Assist.....302
SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions & Information (TDI).....305
Vehicle Health Report.....304
SYNC™.....287
General Information.....287
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....316

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate.....59
See: Power Liftgate.....60
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....265
Temporary Mobility Kit.....239
First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air.....241
General Information.....240
Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.....242
Tips for Use of the Kit.....240
What to Do after the Tire has Been Sealed.....243
What to Do When a Tire Is Punctured.....241
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....196
Tire Care.....245
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....246
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading.....245
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall.....247
Temperature A B C.....246
Traction AA A B C.....245
Treadwear.....245
Tire Inflation When Punctured
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....239
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....259
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....260
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System 261
Tire Repair Kit
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....239
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....239
Towing a Trailer.....182
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....182
Emergency Towing.....182
Recreational Towing.....183
Towing.....182
Traction Control.....159
Principle of Operation.....159
Transmission Code Designation.....268
Transmission.....153
Transmission
See: Transmission.....153
Transporting the Vehicle.....182

U

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Hybrid....210
Unique Driving Characteristics....129
Universal Garage Door Opener....117
HomeLink Wireless Control System....117
USB Port....285
Using Cruise Control....171
ECO Cruise Control....172
Switching Cruise Control Off....171
Switching Cruise Control On....171
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....51
Using Snow Chains....259
Using Stability Control....161
AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)....161
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....308
Accessing Your Play Menu....312
Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port....308
Media Menu Features....310
Media Voice Commands....308
System Settings....314
What's Playing?....308
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....291
Accessing Features through the Phone Menu....295
Accessing Your Phone Settings....298
Making Calls....294
Pairing a Phone for the First Time....292
Pairing Subsequent Phones....292
Phone Options during an Active Call....294
Phone Voice Commands....292
Receiving Calls....294
System Settings....299
Text Messaging....297
Using Traction Control....159
Switching the System Off Using a Switch....159
Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls....159
System Indicator Lights and Messages....159
Using Voice Recognition....289
Initiating a Voice Session....289
System Interaction and Feedback....290
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only)....196

V

Vehicle Care....232
General Information....232
Vehicle Certification Label....267
Vehicle Identification Number....267
Vehicle Storage....236
Battery....237
Body....236
Brakes....237
Cooling system....237
Engine....237
Fuel system....237
General....236
Miscellaneous....237
Removing Vehicle From Storage....237
Tires....237
Ventilation
See: Climate Control....105
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number....267
Voice Control....66

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....83
Anti-Lock Braking System.....84
Battery.....84
Brake System.....84
Cruise Control.....84
Direction Indicator.....84
Door Ajar.....84
Engine and Motor Coolant Temperature.....84
Engine Oil.....84
EV Later.....85
EV Now.....84
Fasten Safety Belt.....85
Front Airbag.....85
Front Fog Lamps.....85
High Beam.....85
Liftgate Ajar.....85
Low Battery.....85
Low Fuel Level.....85
Low Tire Pressure Warning.....85
Overdrive Cancel and Grade Assist.....85
Parking Lamps.....85
Powertrain Fault.....85
Ready to Drive.....86
Service Engine Soon.....86
Stability Control.....86
Stability Control Off.....86
Stop Safely.....86
Vehicle Plugged in.....86
Washer Fluid Check.....217
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....232
See: Wipers and Washers.....68
Waxing.....233
Wheels and Tires.....239
Technical Specifications.....263
Windows and Mirrors.....76
Windshield Washers.....69
Windshield Wipers.....68
Intermittent Wipe.....68
Speed dependent wipers (if equipped).....68
Wipers and Washers.....68